

# SYNOPSIS OF BIOLOGICAL DATA ON THE LARGEMOUTH BASS

# Micopterus salmoides (Lacepède) 1802



FOOD AND AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATION OF THE UNITED NATIONS

# SYNOPSIS OF BIOLOGICAL DATA ON THE LARGEMOUTH BASS

Micropterus salmoides (Lacepède) 1802

# Prepared by

Roy C. Heidinger

Fisheries Research Laboratory and Department of Zoology Southern Illinois University Carbondale, Illinois

FOOD AND AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATION OF THE UNITED NATIONS Rome, November 1976

The designations employed and the presentation of material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries.

> M-42 ISBN 92-5-100211-8

The copyright in this book is vested in the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. The book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, by any method or process, without written permission from the copyright holder. Applications for such permission, with a statement of the purpose and extent of the reproduction desired, should be addressed to the Director, Publications Division, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Via delle Terme di Caracalla, 00100 Rome, Italy.

© FAO

# PREPARATION OF THIS SYNOPSIS

The present document was prepared as a follow-up to a recommendation by The European Inland Fisheries Advisory Commission (EIFAC).

This work was supported by the Graduate School, Southern Illinois University at Carbondale. The literature search was supported by a grant from the Bass Research Foundation, Starkville, Mississippi. The author is especially indebted to the staff of Morris Library, Southern Illinois University and especially to Mr. Lyman C. Dennis for his help and cooperation in obtaining literature and to Dr. William M. Lewis for his review of the manuscript.

This work is dedicated to all the fishery scientists who have contributed the thousands of man years of research upon which this manuscript is based.

### Distribution:

FAO Department of Fisheries FAO Regional Fisheries Officers Regional Fisheries Councils and Commissions Selector SI Author

# Bibliographic entry:

Heidinger, R.C. (1976) <u>FAO Fish.Synop.</u>, (115):85 p. <u>Synopsis of biological data on the large-</u> mouth bass <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u> (Lacepède) <u>1802</u>

Synopsis. Biological data. Freshwater fish. Taxonomy. Identification keys. Vernacular names. Morphology (organisms). Geographical distribution. Hybridization. Sexual reproduction. Life cycle. Development (biological). Autecology. Population characteristics. Inland fisheries. Fishing gear. Fishing grounds. Fishery regulations. Habitat improvement. Stocking (organisms). Fish culture. Freshwater aquaculture. Micropterus salmoides. CONTENTS

|   |       |  | Page                                  |
|---|-------|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | I DEN | ITITY  | 1                                     |
|   | 1.1   | Nomenclature   | 1                                     |
|   |       | 1.11 Valid name<br>1.12 Objective synonymy<br>1.13 Etymology   | 1<br>1<br>1                           |
|   | 1.2   | Taxonomy   | 1                                     |
|   |       | <ul> <li>1.21 Affinities</li> <li>1.22 Taxonomic status</li> <li>1.23 Subspecies</li> <li>1.24 Standard common names, vernacular names</li> </ul>                            | 1<br>3<br>3                           |
|   | 1.3   | Morphology   | 4                                     |
|   |       | <ul> <li>1.31 External morphology</li> <li>1.32 Cytomorphology</li> <li>1.33 Protein specificity</li> <li>1.34 Ageing</li> <li>1.35 Osteology</li> <li>1.36 Blood</li> </ul> | 4<br>4<br>6<br>6<br>6                 |
| 2 | DIST  | RIBUTION   | 6                                     |
|   | 2.1   | Total area   | 6                                     |
|   | 2.2   | Differential distribution  | 7                                     |
|   |       | 2.21 Spawn, larvae and juveniles<br>2.22 Adults  | .7<br>7                               |
|   | 2.3   | Determinants of distribution changes   | . 7                                   |
|   | 2.4   | Hybridization  | 7                                     |
|   |       | 2.41 Hybrids<br>2.42 Influence of natural hybridization in ecology and morphology  | 7<br>7                                |
| 3 | BION  | OMICS AND LIFE HISTORY   | 7                                     |
|   | 3.1   | Reproduction   | 7                                     |
|   |       | <pre>3.11 Sexuality 3.12 Maturity 3.13 Mating 3.14 Fertilization 3.15 Gonads 3.16 Spawning 3.17 Spawn</pre>  | 7<br>10<br>10<br>10<br>10<br>11<br>13 |
|   | 3.2   | Pre-adult phase  | 13                                    |
|   |       | 3.21 Embryonic phase<br>3.22 Larvae phase<br>3.23 Adolescent phase   | 13<br>13<br>14                        |

|      |  | Page                       |
|------|--|----------------------------|
| 3.3  | Adult_phase  | 14                         |
|      | <ul> <li>3.31 Longevity</li> <li>3.32 Hardiness</li> <li>3.33 Competitors</li> <li>3.34 Predators</li> <li>3.35 Parasites, diseases, injuries and abnormalities</li> </ul>                     | 14<br>14<br>14<br>14<br>14 |
| 3.4  | Nutrition and growth   | 18                         |
|      | 3.41 Feeding<br>3.42 Food<br>3.43 Growth rate<br>3.44 Metabolism   | 18<br>19<br>19<br>21       |
| 3.5  | Behaviour  | 25                         |
|      | 3.51 Migration and local movement<br>3.52 Schooling<br>3.53 Responses to stimu<br>3.54 Learning  | 25<br>25<br>25<br>26       |
| POPU | ILATION  | 26                         |
| 4.1  | Structure  | 26                         |
|      | <ul><li>4.11 Sex ratio</li><li>4.12 Age composition</li><li>4.13 Size composition</li></ul>  | 26<br>26<br>29             |
| 4.2  | Abundance and density (of populations)   | 29                         |
|      | <ul> <li>4.21 Average abundance</li> <li>4.22 Changes in abundance</li> <li>4.23 Average density</li> <li>4.24 Changes in density</li> </ul>   | 29<br>29<br>30<br>30       |
| 4.3  | Natality and recruitment   | 30                         |
|      | <ul><li>4.31 Reproduction rates</li><li>4.32 Factors affecting reproduction</li><li>4.33 Recruitment</li></ul>   | 30<br>31<br>31             |
| 4.4  | Mortality and morbidity  | 31                         |
|      | <ul> <li>4.41 Mortality rates</li> <li>4.42 Factors causing or affecting mortality</li> <li>4.43 Factors affecting morbidity</li> <li>4.44 Relation of morbidity to mortality rates</li> </ul> | 31<br>31<br>32<br>32       |
| 4.5  | Dynamics of population (as a whole)  | 32                         |
| 4.6  | The population in the community and the ecosystem  | 35                         |
| EXPI | OITATION   | 35                         |
| 5.1  | Fishing equipment  | 35                         |
|      | 5.11 Gear<br>5.12 Boats  | 35<br>37                   |

4

5

6

7

|       |   | Page                                   |
|-------|---|--|
| 5.2   | Fishing areas   | 39                                     |
|       | <ul> <li>5.21 General geographic distribution</li> <li>5.22 Geographic ranges</li> <li>5.23 Depth ranges</li> <li>5.24 Conditions of the grounds</li> </ul>   | 39<br>39<br>39<br>39                   |
| 5.3   | Fishing seasons   | 39                                     |
|       | <ul> <li>5.31 General pattern of season(s)</li> <li>5.32 Dates of beginning, peak and end of season(s)</li> <li>5.33 Variation in date or duration of season</li> </ul>   | 39<br>39<br>40                         |
| 5.4   | Fishing operations and results  | 40                                     |
|       | <ul> <li>5.41 Effort and intensity</li> <li>5.42 Selectivity</li> <li>5.43 Catches</li> <li>5.44 Sampling and marking</li> </ul>  | 40<br>40<br>40<br>40                   |
| PROTE | CTION AND MANAGEMENT  | 44                                     |
| 6.1   | Regulatory (legislative) measures   | 44                                     |
|       | 6.11 Limitation or reduction of total catch<br>6.12 Protection of portions of population  | 44<br>44                               |
| 6.2   | Control or alteration of physical features of the environment   | 45                                     |
|       | <ul> <li>6.21 Regulation of flow</li> <li>6.22 Control of water levels</li> <li>6.23 Control of erosion and silting</li> <li>6.24 Fishways at artificial and natural obstructions</li> <li>6.25 Fish screens</li> <li>6.26 Improvement of spawning grounds</li> <li>6.27 Habitat improvement</li> </ul> | 45<br>45<br>45<br>45<br>45<br>45<br>45 |
| 6.3   | Control or alteration of chemical features of the environment   | 45                                     |
|       | <ul><li>6.31 Water pollution control</li><li>6.32 Salinity control</li><li>6.33 Artificial fertilization of waters</li></ul>  | 45<br>47<br>47                         |
| 6.4   | Control or alteration of the biological features of the environment   | 47                                     |
|       | <ul> <li>6.41 Control of aquatic vegetation</li> <li>6.42 Introduction of fish foods</li> <li>6.43 Control of parasites and diseases</li> <li>6.44 Control of predation and competition</li> <li>6.45 Population manipulation</li> </ul>  | 47<br>47<br>47<br>47<br>19             |
| 6.5   | Artificial stocking   | 19                                     |
|       | <ul> <li>6.51 Maintenance stocking</li> <li>6.52 Transplantation; introduction</li> <li>6.53 Stocking combinations (ponds)</li> </ul>   | 49<br>50<br>50                         |
| POND  | FISH CULTURE  | 55                                     |
| 7.1   | Use of cultured fish  | 55                                     |

vii

|     |                                      | Page     |
|-----|--------------------------------------|----------|
| 7.2 | Procurement and maintenance of stock | 55       |
| 7.3 | Genetic selection of stock           | 55       |
| 7.4 | Induced spawning                     | 55       |
| 7.5 | Culture methods                      | 56       |
|     | 7.51 Extensive<br>7.52 Intensive     | 56<br>56 |
| 7.6 | Disease and parasite control         | 61       |
| 7.7 | Harvest                              | 61       |
| 7.8 | Transport                            | 61       |

1 IDENTITY

1.1 Nomenclature

1.11 Valid name

Current name: <u>Micropterus salmoides</u> (Lacepède) Original combination: <u>Labrus salmoides</u> (Lacepède): Lacepède, 1802, Histoire naturelle des poissons. Vol. 4. Plassan, Paris, 716-8, Pl. 5, Fig. 2.

1.12 Objective synonymy

There are no junior objective synonyms of the name.

1.13 Etymology

<u>Micropterus</u> = small or short fin, a mutilated second dorsal fin led Lacepède to believe there was a small fin between it and the caudal fin; <u>salmoides</u> = trout-like.

1.2 Taxonomy

1.21 Affinities (after Berg, 1947)

- Suprageneric

Phylum Vertebrata Subphylum Craniata Superclass Gnathostomata Series Pisces Class Teleostomi Subclass Actinopterygii Order Perciformes Suborder Percoidei Family Centrarchidae

- Generic

<u>Micropterus</u> Lacepède, 1802, Histoire naturelle des poissons. Vol. 4. Plassan, Paris. Type <u>M. dolomieui</u>.

- Subjective generic synonyms

<u>Micropterus</u> Lacepède, 1802 (<u>M. dolomieui</u>. Lacepède)

<u>Calliurus</u> Rafinesque, 1820 (<u>C. punctulatus</u> Rafinesque)

<u>Aplites</u> Rafinesque, 1820 (<u>Lepomis pallidus</u> Rafinesque)

<u>Nemocampsis</u> Rafinesque, 1820 (<u>Lepomis</u> <u>flexuolaris</u> Rafinesque)

Dioplites Rafinesque, 1820 (Lepomis salmonea Rafinesque)

<u>Aplesion</u> Rafinesque, 1820 (<u>Etheostoma</u> <u>calliura</u> Rafinesque)

Huro Cuvier and Valenciennes, 1828

(<u>H. nigricans</u> Cuvier and Valenciennes) <u>Grystes</u> Cuvier and Valenciennes, 1829 (Labrus salmoides Rafinesque) The generic concept adopted here is that of Hubbs and Bailey, 1940, a revision of the black basses (<u>Micropterus</u> and <u>Huro</u>), with descriptions of four new forms. Misc. Publ., Univ. Mich., Mus. Zool. 48: 7-51.

Common characteristics include the following: spinous and soft-rayed portions of the dorsal fin united into one; villiform teeth on palatines and ectopterygoids, but none on entopterygoids, present or absent on glossohyal; rigid bifid opercle with lower lobe much longer than upper, especially in adult; large mouth, maxillary extending at least to below centre of pupil; well developed supramaxillary; entire preopercle; 31-33 vertebrae: 14-15 precaudal vertebrae (rarely 13-16); 55-81 scales along lateral line; 9-20 scale rows on cheek; 9-11 dorsal spines; 3 anal spines (very rarely 2 or 4); 6 branchiostegals (very rarely 7); anal base less than half dorsal base; moderately compressed, elongated body; branched pyloric caeca.

- Specific

Labrus salmoides (Lacepède, 1802). (Type locality: rivers near Charleston, South Carolina, U.S.A.).

Lacepède described it solely on the basis of the manuscript communication and drawings furnished to him by M. Bosc.

Probably the oldest preserved specimen of the largemouth bass is in the Museum d'Histoire Naturelle in Paris. This specimen from the state of Florida was described by LeSueur in 1822 and named <u>Cichla</u> floridana.

Diagnosis characters modified from Pfleiger (1968) and Hubbs and Bailey (1940) are as follows: mouth large, upper jaw extending far behind back of eye in fish more than 15 cm in length; midside with a dark horizontal strip; tail fin of young two-coloured rather than three-coloured; hind part of fin darker than base; pyloric caeca mostly befid near base; spinous dorsal nearly separate; outline of spinous dorsal strongly convex, length of shortest dorsal spine near notch less than half length of longest spine (Fig. 1).

## - Some subjective synonymy

Labrus salmoides Lacepède, 1802; placed in synonymy by Jordan, 1880, and Hubbs and Bailey, 1940. Reasons discussed.

Cichla floridana LeSueur, 1822; <u>Huro</u> nigricans Cuvier, in Cuvier and Valenciennes, 1828; <u>Grystes</u> nobilis Agassiz, 1854; <u>Grystes nuecensis</u> Baird and Girard, 1854; <u>Grystes megostoma</u> Garlick, 1857; placed in synonymy in Hubbs and Bailey, 1940. Reasons discussed.

<u>Aplites</u> <u>salmoides</u> ?; placed in synonymy by Hubbs, 1926. Reasons discussed.

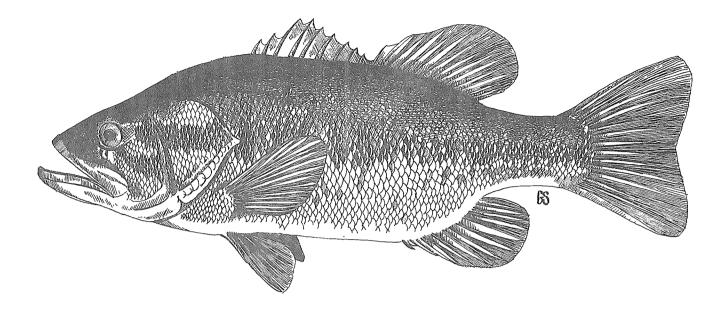


Fig. 1 a) <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u>



b) A 5 kg largemouth bass caught in a shallow Florida lake (photograph courtesy of Steve Wunderly)

<u>Huro</u> <u>salmoides</u> Lacepède, 1802; placed in synonymy by Hubbs and Lagler, 1941. Reasons discussed.

<u>Pikea sericea</u> Fowler, 1938; placed in synonymy by Robins and Böhlke, 1960. Reasons discussed.

Artificial key to the species of <u>Micropterus</u> (after Robbins and McCrimmon, 1974).

- 1a. Dorsal fin deeply notched, shortest posterior spine less than half length of longest spine; anal and soft-dorsal fins scaleless; scales on cheeks large, in 9-12 rows . . . . . . . . Largemouth bass - <u>Micropterus salmoides</u> (Lacepède)
- 2a. Dorsal soft-rays usually 13-15 . . . . . . . Smallmouth bass - <u>Micropterus</u> dolomieui (Lacepède)
- 3a. In young, well developed vertical bars on either side of body with a poorly developed lateral band; adults more boldly striped longitudinally, from the ventrolateral region up over the sides; found only in the rivers and reservoirs of central Texas . . . Guadalupe bass - <u>Micropterus</u> <u>treculi</u> (Vaillant and Bocourt)
- 3b. Young with poorly developed or faded vertical dark bars, and modified into light-centred rhombs on the caudal penduncle; adults, with little distinct colour pattern on sides; lateral band missing or faint in both adults and young; in the streams and rivers of the southeastern Appalachians . . . . . . . . . . . . . Micropterus coosae Hubbs and Bailey
- 3c. Sides with a series of dark blotches, often fused to form a dark lateral band and with a basicaudal spot and patches of lighter blotches above the lateral line . . . . . 4
- 4b. Basicaudal spot large and prominent; ventrolateral region, cheeks and breast turquoise blue in life with some blotching on the cheeks, on the sides and below the lateral

line; found only in the region in and near the Suwannee River in northern Florida . . . Suwanee bass - <u>Micropterus</u> notius Bailey and Hubbs.

1.22 Taxonomic status

This is a well defined species by morphological and breeding data. The species is polytypic.

1.23 Subspecies

First described by Hubbs and Bailey (1949).

<u>M. s. floridanus</u> (LeSueur). Originally found in fresh waters of peninsular Florida.

<u>M. s. salmoides</u> (Lacepède). Originally found in fresh waters of the lower Great Lakes drainage, middle Mississippi River system south to Gulf Coast, Florida, and north to the coastal watersheds in Georgia, South Carolina, North Carolina and Virginia.

Various methods have been used to separate these two subspecies (Table I). In areas of integradation hybrids have intermediate characteristics. In intensively fished warm waters, such as in California where both subspecies have been stocked, the trend in meristic characteristics after a number of generations is toward the southern subspecies (Bottroff, 1967) (see 2.42).

1.24 Standard common names, vernacular names

Names

It is impossible to list common and vernacular names in use in all countries.

Country

| 0              |  |
|----------------|--|
| Australia      | Black bass, freshwater perch, gippoland perch  |
| Austria        | Forellembarsch, perche truitée   |
| Canada         | Largemouth bass, many of those<br>names that are used in the<br>U.S.A., achigan à grande<br>bouche |
| Czechoslovakia | Okounek pstrukový, ostračka  |
| France         | Black-bass à grande bouche,<br>perche-truite   |
| Germany        | Forellembarsch, grossmauliger forellenbarsch   |
| Hungary        | Fekete sügér, pisztrangsügér   |
| Italy          | Persico trota, boccalone   |
| Mexico         | Tucha de patzcuaro, robalo   |
|                | fino, corvina negra, black<br>bass, huro y otros   |
| Netherlands    | Florellenbaars   |
| Poland         | Weilkogebowy, bas weilkogebowy   |
| Portugal       | Black-bass, perca americana,<br>perca-trucha, boca grande,<br>robalo-negro, achigã                 |

# TABLE I

Methods used in separating the southern subspecies (<u>M. s. floridanus</u>) from the northern subspecies (<u>M. s. salmoides)a</u>/

|   | floridanus  | salmoides   | Reference   |
|---|---|---|---|
| Scale countsb/<br>(as above)<br>Number of pyloric caeca<br>(as above)<br>(as above)<br>(as above) | 137.9(129-145)9/<br>136.8(135-141)<br>36.8(26-53)<br>39.0(30-47)<br>F1 progeny 28 | 125.0(116-132)<br>125.9(124-130)<br>24.0(20-33)<br>23.2(13-35)<br>22.7(13-29)<br>8.0(17-41) | Bailey and Hubbs (1949)<br>Buchanan (1968)<br>Applegate (1966)<br>Buchanan (1968)<br>Addison and Spencer (1972)<br>(as above) |
| Number of abdominal<br>vertebrae  | 14  | 15  | Bryan (1969)  |

a/ For isozyme methods see 1.33

 $\overline{b}$  Average of the sum of the 5 meristic scale counts given in Table II

/ Range in parentheses

| Country | Names |
|---------|-------|
|         |       |

United States Largemouth bass, black bass, green bass, Oswego bass, slough bass, lake bass, bigmouth, bucket mouth, southern largemouth, northern largemouth, Florida bass, largemouth black bass, straw bass, bayou bass, moss bass, grass bass, marsh bass, trout, green trout, welchman, chub (primarily from Jordan and Evermann, 1969 ed.)

#### 1.3 Morphology

1.31 External morphology
 (for description of spawn, larvae
 and adolescents, see 3.17, 3.22,
 3.23; also see sexuality, 3.11)

In addition to those morphological characteristics listed in Table I and 1.23, others are listed in TablesII and III. The southern subspecies tends to have more scales than the northern subspecies.

Unlike <u>salmoides</u> and <u>floridanus</u> in the rest of its range, largemouth bass in the southwestern extremity of its range in North America have a high incidence of glossohyal teeth (Bailey and Hubbs, 1949).

Ratios for total length to standard length decline from 1.236 at 50-69 mm to 1.174 at over 450 mm (Stroud, 1948). In general, length-weight regression slopes are above 3.0 but there are many exceptions in the literature. The relationship between mouth width and total length are given by Lawrence (1958) as follows:

| Less |              |      |    |   |   |               |   |        |    | s = 0.69 |
|------|--------------|------|----|---|---|---------------|---|--------|----|----------|
|      | 100-         | -199 | mm | М | = | <b>_1.</b> 88 | + | 0.1113 | L, | s = 1.94 |
|      | 200-         | -299 | mm | Μ | æ | -5.16         | + | 0.1289 | ь, | s = 2.92 |
|      | 300-         | -399 | mm | Μ | = | -7.96         | + | 0.1371 | L, | s = 4.37 |
|      | 400 <b>-</b> | -499 | mm | Μ | n | -29.41        | + | 0.1961 | L, | s = 4.32 |
|      | 500 <b>-</b> | -599 | mm | Μ | n | -56.36        | + | 0.2477 | L, | s = 5.95 |

Where M is mouth width in mm, L is total length in mm, and s is the standard deviation from regression.

#### 1.32 Cytomorphology

Robert (1964) found 46 diploid chromosomes in testis cell culture, but Baker (1956) reported 48 from non-cultured testicular material.

#### 1.33 Protein specificity

Fish with greater amounts of low mobility blood protein are thought to be in general more pollution-tolerant. The serum of 9 largemouth bass averaged 7.8 g of mobil protein per 100 g of sample protein (Bouck and Ball, 1967). In experimental fish subjected to diurnal oxygen pulses, there occurred an increase in low mobility proteins in the blood (Bouck and Ball, 1965).

A combination of hybridization, immunochemical, and electrophoretic analyses revealed that the largemouth bass possess three homopolymeric lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) isozymes, A<sub>4</sub>, B<sub>4</sub> and E<sub>4</sub>. The E<sub>4</sub> retinal-specific homotetramer isozyme is the product of a distant nuclear gene (E locus) on an autosomal chromosome. This E gene appears to segregate independently of the gene for supernatant malate dehydrogenase (MDH) (Whitt <u>et al.</u>, 1971). The interspecific F<sub>1</sub> hybrid between the largemouth and smallmouth bass (<u>M. dolomieui</u>) exhibits 5 eyespecific isozymes formed by the random association of two parental types of E subunits (Whitt, Miller and Shaklee, 1973).

# TABLE II

| Subspecies        | Location  | Bodies of<br>water<br>sampled | LLS  | ALLS                             | BLLS                                      | CPS                              | csª/                         | Reference  |
|-------------------|---|-------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| salmoides         | Arkansas<br>California<br>Ill., Mich.                             | 8<br>21<br>2                  | 58–68<br>56–70<br>59–69                            | 7-9<br>6-9<br>7-9                | 13–18<br>13–19<br>14–17                   | 24–32<br>23–30<br>24–30          | 8–13<br>9–13                 | Buchanan (1967)b/<br>Bottroff (1968)<br>Bailey and Hubbs                                     |
|                   | Alabama<br>Florida<br>S. Carolina<br>Indiana<br>Ohio<br>Tennessee | 2<br>2<br>1<br>2<br>1<br>1    | 60–68<br>58–68<br>59–69<br>61–71<br>57–68<br>58–64 | 7-9<br>7-8<br>7-9<br>7-9<br>7-10 | 14–17<br>14–16<br>14–17<br>13–16<br>21–17 | 24–28<br>25–27<br>24–29<br>26–28 | 9–12<br>9–11<br>9–12<br>9–12 | (1949)<br>(as above)<br>(as above)<br>(as above)<br>Frey (1951)<br>Hart (1952)<br>(as above) |
| <u>floridanus</u> | California<br>Florida<br>Florida<br>Florida                       | 8<br>4                        | 62 <b>-</b> 79<br>65 <b>-</b> 77<br>65 <b>-</b> 75 | 6–10<br>7–11<br>7–10             | 14–20<br>14–23<br>16–18                   | 24–32<br>24–34<br>27–32          | 10–14<br>10–14               | Bottroff (1968)<br>Buchanan (1967)b/<br>Bailey and Hubbs<br>(1949)                           |
|                   | normal fish<br>stunted fish                                       | 1<br>1                        | 57 <b>-</b> 77<br>64 <b>-</b> 70                   | 8 <b>-</b> 11<br>7-10            | 14–17<br>14–16                            |                                  |                              | Hart (1952)<br>(as above)  |
| Intergrades       | California<br>Florida   | 6<br>1                        | 58 <b>-</b> 78<br>57-68                            | 6 <b>-</b> 10<br>6-8             | 13 <b>-</b> 19<br>12 <b>-</b> 16          | 24 <b>-</b> 31<br>25 <b>-</b> 30 | 9 <b>-</b> 12                | Bottroff (1967)<br>Buchanan (1967) <u>b</u> /  |

Range of scale counts in North American populations of largemouth bass

a/ LLS = lateral line scales; ALLS = scales above lateral line; BLLS = scales below lateral line; CPS = scales around caudal peduncle; CS = cheek scales

b/ And personal communication with Buchanan

# TABLE III

Range of vertebrae, spine and ray counts in North American populations of largemouth bass

| Subspecies | Location                | V                              | DS   | DR             | AS  | AR             | PRª/           | Reference                   |
|------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|------|----------------|-----|----------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| salmoides  | Ohio<br>Ohio River      | 30 <b></b> 32<br>30 <b></b> 33 | -    | 12–14          |     |                |                | Hart (1952)<br>Bryan (1969) |
|            | -                       | -                              |      | 11 <b>-</b> 14 | 3   | 10 <b>-</b> 12 | 13–17          | Hubbs and Bailey<br>(1940)  |
|            | Indiana                 | -                              | 8–10 | 12 <b></b> 14  | 2-3 | 11–12          | 14 <b>-</b> 15 | Frey (1951)                 |
| floridanus | Florida                 | -                              | 9–11 | 12 <b>-</b> 14 | 3   | 10–12          | 14 <b></b> 16  | Bailey and Hubbs<br>(1949)  |
|            | Ohio<br>Florida, Calif. | 30 <b>-</b> 32<br>32           |      |                |     |                |                | Hart (1952)<br>Bryan (1969) |

 $\underline{a}$ / V = vertebrae; DS = dorsal spines; DR = dorsal rays; AS = anal spines; AR = anal rays; PR = pectoral rays

Supernatant MDH isozymes (as visualized by starch gel electrophoresis) consist of two homodimers AA and BB, and a heterodimer AB, which are encoded by two distinct gene loci. When an interspecific  $F_1$  hybrid is formed between the largemouth and smallmouth bass a unique MDH heterodimer isozyme composed of one subunit of each parental type is generated. The inheritance of alleles at the MDH-B locus is consistent with a single Mendelian autosomal locus (Wheat <u>et al.</u>, 1971).

Isocitrate dehydrogenase (IDH) activity is highest in the liver. It is encoded at a single locus and is not sexed linked. The IDH phenotype is exhibited as a single band on electrophoretic analysis. The F1 hybrid tissues possess three dimeric isozyme bands, the fast smallmouth bass isozyme, the slow largemouth bass isozyme, and the intermediate hybrid band, presumably a heteropolymer composed of parental subunits. When male F1 largemouth bass x smallmouth bass are back crossed with a female LMB, there appears to be rapid elimination of their heterozygous progeny in pond populations. When these offspring are placed in plastic pools, where cannibalism is the main source of mortality, the heterozygotes are no longer subject to adverse selection. The progeny of this cross exhibited a strong correlation between increased heterozygosity and increased rate of growth. In the reciprocal backcross there were no significant differences between heterozygous and homozygous individuals as far as survival or growth rates are concerned in either the pond or plastic pool environment. These differences between the reciprocal crosses may be related to maternal cytoplasmic effects on development (Wheat, Childers and Whitt, 1974).

The Florida subspecies, northern subspecies and their integrades can be differentiated by MDH and tetrazolium oxidase isozymic differences. The northern subspecies is polymorphic for the malate dehydrogenase-B isozyme. Individuals are classified phenotypically as S/S, S/F, or F/F with S representing the more slowly migrating allelic isozyme and F representing the more rapidly migrating band. All individuals of the Florida subspecies analysed have been monomorphic for the fast MDH-B band. The Florida subspecies is polymorphic for tetrozolium oxidase and can be classified phenotypically as F/F, F/S, or S/S. All northern largemouth analysed have been monomorphic for fast tetrazolium oxidase isozyme.  $F_1$  hybrids exhibited gene frequencies for both enzyme loci which were intermediate between those of their parental subspecies populations (Childers and Whitt, 1974).

Agglutination of erythrocytes from the northern and southern subspecies to rabbit antiserum indicated immunological differences between the fish examined, but few were characteristic of one or the other subspecies (Miller, 1965). Scale homografts were rejected within 30 days at 15-18°C (Reid and Triplett, 1968).

#### 1.34 Ageing

Ageing of bass by counting the number of annuli on the scales is an approximation at best (Thompson. 1965; LaFaunce, 1965; Eschmeyer and Jones, 1941). The scale method proved 80% accurate in ageing 0-2 year old Alabama bass (Prather, 1967), and 94% accurate in 0-4 year old Texas bass (Prentice and Whiteside, 1974), To obtain this degree of accuracy required multiple readings. However, in an Iowa study the second reading by the same individual agreed on only 64% of 239 bass (Thompson, 1965). In the U.S.A. annulus formation has been reported from April up to and including August (Benson, 1959; Zweiacker, 1972; Cross, 1951; Manning, 1951; Morgan, 1958; Stroud, 1948). In general it occurs later in the northern portion of the bass's range, in larger fish, and in slower-growing fish.

#### 1.35 Osteology

Largemouth bass have acellular bone. Osteocytes are completely absent from the matrix and apparently are not present during any ontological stage. Except for the long bones of the branchial arch system which show epiphyseal growth, bass bones grow only by apposition. Four basic types of bone formation are recognized. Achondral ossification is characteristic of most cranium bones, parachondra ossification is primarily found in the neurocranium, perichondral ossification is characteristic in most of the cartilage bone, and endochondral ossification is found in the vertebrae (Al-Saadi, 1962).

# 1.36 Blood

Some of the known parameters for largemouth bass blood other than those listed in Table IV are as follows: oxygen capacity 42-86 cc/l, lactic acid 28-270 mg% (Denyes and Joseph, 1956); Na<sup>+</sup> 128-198 meg/l, K<sup>+</sup> 0.6-8.2 meg/l, Cl<sup>-</sup> 95-127 meg/l, total plasma cholesterol 90-680 mg/100 ml (Hunn and Robinson, 1966); length x width of red blood cell 10.0-6.8  $\mu$ , length x width of red blood cell nucleus 5.8-3.1  $\mu$  (Coburn, 1970; Smith <u>et al.</u>, 1952).

Chew (1969) found that the range of serum calcium in male and female bass was 10-24 (120 male fish) versus 11-32 (88 female fish) mg/100 ml. In. both males and females the calcium value increased during the spawning season, but the increase was much greater in the females.

#### 2 DISTRIBUTION

### 2.1 Total area

See 1.23 for original distribution. Due to introductions by man the largemouth bass occurs in

| TABLE | IV |
|-------|----|
|-------|----|

Hematological characteristics of largemouth bass

| Red blood cells<br>(no. x 10 <sup>6</sup> /ml) | Hemoglobin<br>(g/100 ml) | Hematocrit (%)<br>male female           | Serum protein<br><u>(mg/ml)</u><br>male female                 | Reference                   |
|--|--------------------------|---|--|-----------------------------|
| 1.47-1.74                                      | 5.3-7.0                  | 21-33 both sexes                        |  | Coburn (1970)               |
| 1.72-1.48                                      | 5.5-12.3                 | _                                       |  | Denyes and Joseph (1956)    |
|  | 9.8-13.2                 |   | 1000 1000  | Hiestand (1951)             |
| -  | 5.8-8.5                  |   | 1473 4484  | Hunn and Robinson (1966)    |
| -  | -                        | 35-62 26-49                             | angene allerete  | Steucke and Atherton (1965) |
| -  | A Local                  | 24-27 sex ? ,                           |  | Schoettger and Julin (1966) |
| -  |                          | 44.4ª/, 45.4ª/,                         | 7.8 <u>a</u> / 4.2 <u>a</u> /<br>8.6 <u>b</u> / 9.4 <u>b</u> / | McCraren (1974)             |
| -  |                          | 41.4 <sup>b</sup> / 42.4 <sup>b</sup> / | 8.6 <u>b</u> / 9.4 <u>b</u> /                                  | (as above)                  |
| -  | -                        | 31 42                                   | BKT 1463   | Smitherman (1965)           |

<u>a</u>/ Bass fed Oregon Moist Pellets (see 7.52)

b/ Bass fed natural food

fresh waters of many countries and provinces (Fig. 2). The following distribution, date of initial stocking and original source is primarily from Robbins and McCrimmon (1974) (Table V).

The largemouth bass has been introduced (date in parentheses) unsuccessfully or has disappeared from the following countries: Canal Zone (1917); Nicaragua (1959-60); Venezuela (1935?); Malawi (1937); Mozambique (1947); Tunisia (1966); Zaire (1945); Zambia (1944?); Mauritius (1949); Cyprus (1971); Denmark (1901); Finland (1893); The Netherlands (1884); Norway (1887); Sweden (1885-90); Yugoslavia (1914); Poland (1883); Guam (1963).

- 2.2 Differential distribution
  - 2.21 Spawn, larvae and juveniles (see 2.22, 3.16, 3.22)
  - 2.22 Adults

The adult male largemouth bass guards the nest and fry. In general the juveniles tend to stay along the shoreline in shallower, more protected areas than do the adults.

> 2.3 Determinants of distribution changes (see 3.32 (Table VII) for O<sub>2</sub>, pH, temperature, salinity and turbidity tolerances)

Successful introductions into constant temperature areas such as Central America and Africa plus reproduction in constant temperature springs (see 3.16) in Florida have refuted the idea that a clear annual cycle of temperature is required for spawning. Failure of introductions can be attributed to cold temperature (but not to hot), fast current or predation by native species.

## 2.4 Hybridization

2.41 Hybrids; frequency of hybridization; species with which hybridization occurs; methods of hybridization

Hybridization readily occurs between the two subspecies. In their native range no unequivocal natural interspecific hybrid has been found. Childers (1975) reports that 30-50 largemouth bass x bluegill hybrids were caught in the Puu Kaele reservoir on the island of Kauai, Hawaii. Hybrids have not been produced by isolation methods. However, by striping and in some cases hormone injections both interspecific and intergeneric hybrids have been produced (Table VI).

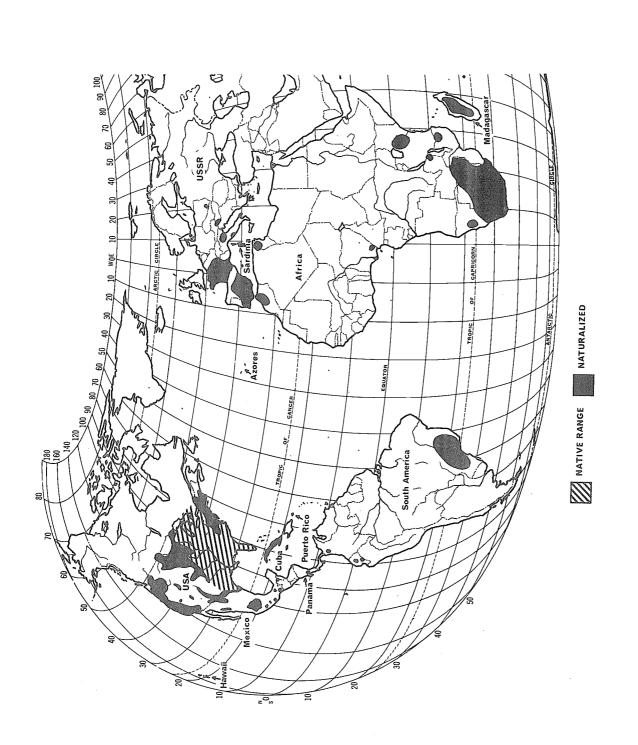
2.42 Influence of natural hybridization in ecology and morphology

After ten years of natural hybridization between the two subspecies in the heavily fished warm waters of some Californian lakes, the meristic characteristics of the bass populations have shifted toward those of the southern subspecies (Bottroff, 1967).

Meristic characteristics of interspecific  $F_1$  hybrids were found to be intermediate in 11 out of 17 characters (West and Hester, 1966).

- 3 BIONOMICS AND LIFE HISTORY
  - 3.1 Reproduction
    - 3.11 Sexuality

Largemouth bass are heterosexual. Functional sex reversal or functional hermaphroditism does not





FIR/S115 Largemouth bass

| Δ     |  |
|-------|--|
| TABLE |  |

Present day distribution of the largemouth bass (primarily after Robbins and McCrimmon, 1974)

|                          | Year of finst        | l an i a i nO   | Regular stocking                     |               | Status                     |  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|--|
| Country                  | introduction         | source          | programme in at<br>least some waters | sport<br>fish | commercial<br>or food fish | Regulations                            |
| U.S.A.                   | Native               | Ĩ               | Yes                                  | Yes           | No                         | See 6.11                               |
| Canada                   | Native<br>introduced | U.S.A.          | Tes                                  | Yes           | No                         | Length, season and<br>numerical limit  |
| Mexico                   |                      | U.S.A.          | Yes                                  | Yes           | Yes                        | la certain waters<br>20 cm minimum, no |
|                          | introduced (1898)    |                 |                                      |               |                            | season, limit 5<br>per day             |
| Brazil                   | 1926                 | 1               | Yes                                  | Yes           | 1                          |  |
| Columbia                 | 1956                 | U.S.A.          | No                                   | I             | I                          | 1                                      |
| Costa Rica               | 1                    | U.S.A.?         | No                                   | Yes           | No .                       | None                                   |
| Cuba                     | 1915                 | U.S.A.          | Yes                                  | Yes           | Yes                        | I                                      |
| Ecuador                  | 0961                 | U.S.A.          | 1                                    | I             | 1                          | None                                   |
| Guatemala<br>Ton Jone 2  | I L C                | U.S.A.          | No                                   | Yes           | Yes                        | 1                                      |
| Donaut'as                | 2021                 | U. ひ. A.        | NO                                   | Ies           | ł                          | 1                                      |
| Fauldulid<br>Phonto Rino | 1015                 | U•v•A•<br>П Ω ≯ | O NI                                 | 1             | 1                          | · ···                                  |
| Botswana                 | 1938                 | Swariland       | 20 <b>1</b>                          | ם<br>ד<br>ד   | D                          |  |
| Cameroun                 | 1956                 | France          | No                                   | 1             | 1                          | 1 1                                    |
| Kenya                    | 1929                 | Europe          | Yes                                  | Yes           | Yes                        | 1                                      |
| Lesotho                  | 1937                 | Swaziland       | No                                   | i             | I                          | 1                                      |
| Madagascar               | 1951                 | France          | Yes                                  | Yes           | Yes                        | None                                   |
| Morocco                  | 1934                 | France          | Yes                                  | Yes           | 1                          | 1                                      |
| Rhodesia                 | 1932                 | Cape Province   | Yes                                  | Yes           | Yes                        | 1                                      |
| South Africa             | 1928                 | The Netherlands | Yes                                  | Yes           | Yes                        | 1                                      |
| Swaziland                | 1933                 | Cape Province   | No                                   | Yes           | 1                          | Permit required                        |
| Tanzarıa                 | 1956?                | Kenya           | No                                   | Yes           | Yes                        | 1                                      |
| Tunisia                  | 1966                 | Morocco         | Yes                                  | ł             | 1                          | 1                                      |
| Uganda                   | 1960                 | Kenya           | No                                   | Yes           | Yes                        | None                                   |
| Azores                   | 1898                 | U.S.A.          | No                                   | Yes           | No                         | I                                      |
| Austria                  | 1885                 | Germany         | No                                   | Yes           | No                         | 1                                      |
| Belgium                  | 1885-90              | Germany         | No                                   | 1             | I                          | I                                      |
| British Isles            | 1879                 | U.S.A.          | No                                   | Yes           | No                         | i                                      |
| Czechoslovakia           | 1885-90              | Germany         | No                                   |               | 1                          | 1                                      |
|                          | 1877                 | U.S.A.          | No                                   | Yes           | 1                          | I                                      |
| Germany -<br>Ted Ren     | 1885                 | Con Tem Pen     | М                                    | M             | **[*** ~***+[**/           | Mono                                   |
| Tungarv                  | 1885-90              | Germany         | NO                                   | D Mane        | Rane<br>Rane               | -                                      |
| Ttalv                    | 1886-90.             | Germanv         | Yes                                  |               | Yes                        | 1                                      |
| Spain                    | 1955-56              | France          | Yes.                                 | Yes           | No.                        | .1                                     |
| Switzerland              | 1885-90              | Germany         | No                                   | Yes           | No                         | I                                      |
| U.S.S.R.                 | 1885-90              | Germany         | 1                                    | 1             | Yes                        | 1                                      |
| Japan                    | 1925                 | U.S.A.?         | No                                   | Yes           | No                         | Angling only                           |
| Philippines              | 1907                 | U.S.A.          | No                                   | I             | 1                          | 1                                      |
|                          |                      |                 |                                      |               |                            |  |

FIR/S115 Largemouth bass

9

a/

# TABLE VI

|  |  | interspecific |  |  |
|--|--|---------------|--|--|
|  |  |               |  |  |
|  |  |               |  |  |
|  |  |               |  |  |

| <u>Hybri</u><br>Female | d cross<br>x Male     | Hatch as<br>a % of<br>controls | F <sub>1</sub> fry<br>produced<br>(5 cm) | F1s<br>fertile |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|--|----------------|
| Lepomis macrochirus    | Micropterus salmoides | 9                              | No                                       | No             |
| L. gulosus             | M. salmoides          | 71                             | Yes                                      |                |
| Pomoxis nigromaculatus | M. salmoides          | 1                              | No                                       | No             |
| Ambloplites rupestris  | M. salmoides          | 0                              | No                                       | No             |
| M. salmoides           | P. nigromaculatus     | 1                              | No                                       | No             |
| M. salmoides           | L. macrochirus        | 66                             | Yes                                      | -              |
| M. salmoides           | L. gulosus            | <b>1</b> 04                    | Yes                                      | No             |
| M. salmoides           | A. rupestris          | 1                              | Yes                                      |                |
| M. salmoides           | A. rupestris          | High                           | No                                       | -              |
| M. salmoides           | M. dolomieui          | 90                             | Yes                                      | Yes            |
| M. salmoides           | L. cyanellus          | High                           | Yes                                      | -              |
| M. salmoides           | L. microlophus        | High                           | No                                       |                |
| M. dolomieui           | M. salmoides          | High                           | Yes                                      | -              |

a/ Table was compiled from the following papers: West and Hester, 1966; Hester, 1970; West, 1970; Whitt <u>et al.</u>, 1971; Tyus, 1969; Childers, 1968; and from personal communication with E. Hester and B. Childers

occur. However, James (1946a) reported the abnormal occurrence of both testicular and ovarian tissue in the gonads of several largemouth bass.

Externally bass greater than 35 cm in total length can be sexed correctly 92 percent of the time by looking at the scaleless area surrounding and immediately adjacent to the urogenital opening (Parker, 1971). In the male this area is nearly circular in shape while in the female it is elliptical or pear-shaped.

Internally largemouth bass may be sexed with an otoscope (Driscoll, 1969). Male bass tend to have a higher hematocrit value than female bass, but the values overlap. Steucke and Atherton (1965) found that 1 in every 7 male bass possessed a hematocrit value below the established average of 42.7, while 1 in every 6 females had a value above this average value.

## 3.12 Maturity

Sexual maturity is more related to size than to age. Female bass reach maturity when approximately 25 cm in total length (200 g), while males may be mature at 22 cm (160 g) (James, 1942; Bennett, 1948; Moorman, 1957; Holvik, 1970). Fastgrowing bass in tropical or subtropical regions may reach maturity in 8 months to 1 year, whereas slow-growing bass or those found in the northern portion of their range may require 3 to 5 years to sexually mature (Regier, 1963; Moorman, 1957; Stocek and McCrimmon, 1965; Erdman, 1972; Fehlmann, 1930). 3.13 Mating

Promiscuous, see 3.16.

3.14 Fertilization

External.

#### 3.15 Gonads

Johnston (1951) found that germ cells segregate and differentiate in the early blastopore stage. Migration by amoeboid movement of the germ cells to the gonadal primordia begins 37 hours after fertilization and requires 16-18 hours. Sex appears to be determined by the chromosomal makeup of the fertilized egg. Between 2 and 3 cm of length undifferentiated gonadal sex exist. Sex is microscopically distinguished in females from 3 to 4 cm in length. Females larger than 4 cm can be sexed by gross dissection. In males sex is microscopically distinguishable at 4 cm and by gross dissection at 5-6 cm.

The ovaries of largemouth bass are paired bilobed, elongated nearly circular in cross section, and have been reported to make up as much as 7-10 percent of the body weight (James, 1942; Chew, 1974). The lumen of the ovary is continuous with the oviduct (Stevens, 1970).

James (1946b) divided the process of oogensis into the following five stages. Egg diameters are from Kelley (1962) who used bass from Maine. Based on diameters of fertilized eggs (see 3.17) these values may be too small for larger or more rapidly growing bass. Stage 1: Youngest oocytes - Numerous small irregular oocytes, containing a round or slightly oval nucleus filling most of the cell, "lampbrush" chromosomes are present in the largest oocytes of this stage, follicular membrane composed of a layer of flat cells.

Stage 2: Vacuolization of the cytoplasm -Oocytes characterized by small vacuoles in the peripheral cytoplasm and the absence of yolk material, most abundant in mature but redeveloping ovaries, diameters of the largest from 0.34-0.48 mm, follicular membrane composed of two layers of flattened cells, nucleus oval with numerous nucleoli close to its membrane.

Stage 3: <u>Beginning of yolk deposition</u> - Yolk present but still transparent, diameter of largest 0.45-0.75 mm, most abundant in ovaries in advanced stages of redevelopment, follicular membrane composed of small round cells with a distinct nucleus outside and a clearly defined homogeneous zona radiata on the inside.

Stage 4: <u>Mature ova</u> - Diameters of 0.75-1.56 mm with abundant yolk which almost fills the oocytes and renders them opaque, the fully ripened oocyte contains a distinct yellow oil globule 0.34-0.54 mm in diameter, vitelline membrane present, zona radiata with radial stations, nucleus located at one pole. Mature ova constitute the bulk of the ovary.

Stage 5: <u>Resorption</u> - Oocytes characterized by being enlarged and distorted. Disintegration is rapid. Stevens (1970) reports both follicular and extra-follicular resorption.

The process of maturation is described by Stevens (1970), as follows: "During final maturation of bass oocytes just prior to ovulation, multiple oil globules appear and gradually coalesce to form one large globule. This globule then changes in shape from oval to round and seems to rise from the interior of the egg to the surface. During this process the egg increases in volume and changes from opaque to translucent".

Occytes of an individual occur in more than one stage of maturity. Stevens (1970) reported what he considered to be multiple or "miniovulations". However, Wilbur and Langford (1974) pointed out the possibility that the second ovulations reported by Stevens could be carryovers of the initial ovulation.

In 11 separate studies cited by K. Carlander (in manuscript material from "Handbook of freshwater fisheries", Vol. 2) and Bishop (1968) from various places in the United States the ovaries of female bass contained 2 000-145 000 eggs (2 000-176 000/kg). Some of this variation may be due to the methods used in counting the eggs. The average number of eggs remaining in the "spent" ovaries of 1.3 kg females was 103 680 per fish (Bishop, 1968).

James (1942, 1946b) describes the testes and their developmental stages. The testes are elongated organs in the posterior-dorsal part of the body cavity, lying against the ventral wall of the swim bladder. They are fused posteriorly and a duct leads to the urogenital opening. Anteriorly they are connected to the swimbladder with two mesorchia. Each testis is covered with connective tissue that extends into the testes on the ventral side.

Stage 1: <u>Immature testis</u> - Lobules containing many spermatogonial cells. Each spherical spermatogonium contains a small round central nucleus.

Stage 2: <u>Poorly developed testis</u> - Prominent strands of connective tissue around the lobules. Each lobule has spermatogonial cells near the periphery and a large lumen surrounded by spermatogonial cysts undergoing the early stages of spermatogenesis.

Stage 3: <u>Enlarged testis</u> - Cysts of spermatogonial cells near periphery of lobule, primary and secondary spermatocytes, and spermatids near interior.

Stage 4: <u>Spawning condition testis</u> - Very few spermatogonial cells. Testis appears swollen with the ducts and the lobules filled with spermatozoa resembling small oval lobes.

Stage 5: <u>Partly spent testis</u> - As milt is extruded the ducts and lobules decrease in size. Some sperm remains.

Stage 6: <u>Completely spent testis</u> - Testis contains few spermatozoa, but denudation of the lobes is rare. Lobes are mostly filled with spermatogonial cells.

> 3.16 Spawning (for effect of age on spawning see 3.31 and 7.2)

Male largemouth bass build a nest in the spring when the water temperature reaches  $15-24^{\circ}C$  (Kramer and Smith, 1962; Swingle, 1956). However, in a constant temperature spring (22°C) in Florida bass spawning still appears to be chiefly limited to spring and summer (Caldwell <u>et al.</u>, 1957). Thus other factors, such as length of day, must control the spawning cycle. Swingle (1956) reports occasional autumn spawning in Alabama, when the water temperature drops to 20-24°C. These may have been young fish just reaching sexual maturity. Females tend to spawn once a year. However, the spawning act may be prolonged and they may lay their eggs in more than one nest (Lamkin, 1901).

In the southern portion of its range the spawning season of the bass tends to be more prolonged than in the northern portion. In southern Florida spawning starts when the water "cools" to about  $16^{\circ}$ C in mid-December to mid-January, peaks in February, and stops in April or May ( $27^{\circ}$ C). In marshes with cooler water, spawning may continue into July (Clugston, 1966). In Illinois bass spawn after the water "warms" in the spring from May to end-June (Bennett, 1954) and in Ontario from late May to early June Stocek and McCrimmon, 1965).

In a 1 120 ha reservoir receiving thermal effluent averaging 10°C above ambient Bennett and Gibbons (1975) found earlier attainment of maximum gonadal size and the presence of significantly larger juvenile bass in the heated area. Data were inconclusive as to whether or not spawning was advanced by at least some bass in the heated area. The reproductive period started in March and continued through April in both heated and non-heated areas.

In California, the Florida subspecies reached the peak of spawning two weeks before the northern subspecies in the same lake, but there was considerable overlap in spawning (Hunsaker and Crawford, 1964).

Preparatory to spawning the male bass selects a nest site, usually in water from 0.33 to 1.33 m in depth. The author has observed male bass guarding nests from 15 cm to 5.5 m in depth. Nests may be constructed almost anywhere in a lake, but it is not unusual for them to be grouped on certain shorelines or in specific coves (Miller and Kramer, 1971) that are warmest and provide protection from excess wind action which can destroy nests. The nests are often constructed to take advantage of the protection offered by rocks, stumps or slopes (Miller and Kramer, 1971). Bass nests are spaced 2 m or more apart (Carr, 1942) unless some obstruction prevents the guarding males from seeing each other (Breder, 1936).

The male bass places his head in the centre of the nest and sweeps debris out in front of him. He then returns and with his head in the middle of the nest pivots around in a circle (Carr, 1942). Thus the radius of the nest tends to be approximately the length of the bass. The male may remove large material with its mouth (Eddy and Surber, 1947). Almost any substrate may be used as a nest site from rock to organic debris. Nests built on hard substrate are shallower than those built on soft substrate. Bass nests in Lake Mead consisted of 2.5 percent rubble, 31 percent coarse gravel, 41 percent fine gravel, 16 percent sand, 7 percent silt and 0.2 percent organic debris (Allan and Romero, 1975).

With regard to mating, Chew (1974), Reighard (1906), Breder (1936) and Carr (1942) all agree on the following points:

"1. The male leaves repeatedly after nest construction in search of a ripe female.

2. Males can attract only ripe females to the nests by their aggressive courting behaviour, which includes rapid and vivid colour pattern changes.

3. Male and female return to the nest and circle slowly.

4. The male then stimulates the female by physical contact such as nipping, butting or pushing. At this time, the colour pattern of both becomes more definite and vivid.

5. Spawning begins with both fish over the nest, side by side, and each tilted laterally so their vents are close.

6. Egg and sperm emission are accompanied by violent jerks or shudders of the body. Each time the shudders occur, eggs are omitted, fertilized, and sink slowly into the nest.

7. Spawning takes place over a prolonged period. Carr (1942) counted six spawning spasms within a period of 30 minutes for one pair.

8. Spawning ceases when the female, instead of floating and resting, moves slowly away from the nest.

9. The male will usually follow her for a short distance and then return to the nest to assume guardianship."

A male bass may entice more than one female bass to lay her eggs in his nest. Also, a single female bass may not lay all of her eggs in the same nest (Lamkin, 1901). Successful bass nests have been reported to contain 5 000-43 000 eggs (Snow, 1971; Kramer and Smith, 1962).

Some bass lay their eggs during midday, but most spawning occurs at night near dusk or dawn (Carr, 1942; Kelley, 1962; Reighard, 1906). After the eggs are fertilized, they settle to the bottom of the nest and adhere to the substrate. The male bass fans the eggs and guards the nest against predators such as the bluegill sunfish Lepomis macrochirus. Slow moving organisms such as snails, dragonfly larvae and aquatic beetles are often ignored by the guarding bass (Shealy, 1971). This is true even in the case of the snail Viviparus georgianus, which eats the eggs (Eckblad and Shealy, 1972). Certain species of fishes, such as the golden shiner (<u>Notemigonus</u> crysoleucas) and the lake chubsucker (Erimyzon sucetta), are allowed to lay their eggs in bass nests (Kramer and Smith, 1960a; Carr, 1942). The male bass fans and protects these eggs along with his own.

Male bass do not eat when they are guarding the nest or fry. They will "mouth" a fish, crayfish, or artificial bait and move it out of the nest. The male bass continues to guard the young fish for several weeks after they hatch. Since interspecific and intergeneric crosses are physiologically possible (see 2.4), yet do not occur in the bass normal range, behavioural and temporal isolation between species is essentially complete. Hybridization between the two subspecies is common.

3.17 Spawn

Fertilized eggs are yellow to orange, spherical (1.4-1.8 mm in diameter), semiopaque, contain one large oil globule (0.5-0.7 mm in diameter), adhesive and demersal (Meyer, 1970; Carr, 1942; Chew, 1974). The diameter of the egg increases with the size of female (Merriner, 1971). The eggs lie with the oil globule up, and water-harden within 15 min. Eggs are covered with a thin (0.025 mm), flexible membrane, over the zona radiata (vitelline membrane). The perivitelline space is about 0.05 mm and filled with a colourless fluid.

Bass sperm have an ovoid head approximately 2 microns long, with a tail 20 microns long (Carr, 1942). The spermatozoa are viable for only a minute or so after they are shed.

3.2 Pre-adult phase

3.21 Embryonic phase

At 10, 18 and 28°C the eggs hatch in 317, 55 and 49 h respectively (Badenhuizen, 1969; Merriner, 1971). Chew (1974) describes embryonic development at 22.2°C as follows:

| 1.25   | h | 6.00        | 2 to 4 cell stage                         |
|--------|---|-------------|---|
| 2.25   | h | -           | 16 cell stage                             |
| 3.25   | h | 4000        | blastula                                  |
| 5.25   | h | 6794        | blastoderm beginning to spread over yolk  |
| 7.25   | h | ****        | blastoderm spreading rapidly over<br>yolk |
| 14.00  | h | Anna        | gastrulation, blastopore open             |
|        |   |             | gastrula, blastopore open                 |
|        |   |             | early embryo, blastopore closed           |
| 31.50  | h | Compt       | embryo, myomeres forming, head            |
|        |   |             | developing                                |
| 37.00  | h | <b>6993</b> | late embryo                               |
| 45.50  | h | -           | first hatching                            |
| 60.00  | h | 6           | yolk sac larvae                           |
| 77.00  | h |             | yolk sac larvae                           |
| 82.50  | h | -           | yolk sac larvae, head no longer           |
|        |   |             | deflected over yolk, mouth opening        |
| 167.00 | h | (anti-      | yolk sac larvae, beginning free           |
|        |   |             | swimming, yolk reabsorbing, pig-          |
|        |   |             | mentation of head region, mouth           |
|        |   |             | fully formed.                             |
|        |   |             |   |

Considering the variation in experimental temperatures, the stages agree closely with those of Badenhuizen (1969), Merriner (1971), Johnston (1951), Laurence (1969) and the more detailed description given by Carr (1942).

### 3.22 Larvae phase

At hatching the pre-larvae are 3-5.5 mm in total length (Carr, 1942; Johnston, 1953; Meyer, 1970). If there are sticks or gravel in the nest the almost colourless fry settle among them for several days. According to Reighard (1906) at first the larvae move by rocking from side to side on the yolk sac. After several days they are able to rest on the ventral surface of their yolk sac. where a sticky cap is present. Reighard (1906) comments that the function of this cap is to keep the larvae from sinking into the bottom ooze. The larvae can "right" themselves and rise from the nest only after the swimbladder begins to inflate (Johnston, 1953). Even though a pneumatic duct exists in 3-8 mm larvae they do not have to gulp air to fill their swimbladder. The initial gas which fills the swimbladder appears to be derived from vacuolated columnar cells found in the ventral epithelium of the swimbladder (Johnston, 1953).

Growth rate of pre-larvae is correlated (r = 0.885, 1 percent level) with water temperature (Kramer and Smith, 1960b). Laurence (1969) reported that at 20°C the mouth forms in 192 h after fertilization, the larva is free-swimming after 240 h, and the yolk sac is absorbed in 312 h. This agrees with the observations of Chew (1974), Carr (1942), Lamkin (1901), and Kramer and Smith (1962).

Fry must eat within 6 days after becoming free-swimming or they will die (Laurence, 1971a). At normal developmental temperatures the larvae have enough energy in the yolk to provide for all metabolic processes for a short period following the initiation of feeding. However, only 74 percent of the larvae Laurence (1969) looked at obtained food within the critical period. The cause of non-feeding was not determined. Fed fry, 1-7 days after becoming free-swimming, are more active than non-fed fry. Fed larvae can attain a sustained swimming velocity of 4.0 cm/sec while starved larvae attain a velocity of only 1.5 cm/sec (Laurence, 1972).

During daylight hours at  $20^{\circ}$ C small fry pass food through their stomach in approximately 3 h. The number of minutes required during daylight hours for 10-16 day old, actively feeding fry to evacuate their stomach contents is expressed by the linear regression equation: y = 354.63 - 10.41x, where x = water temperature from 17 to  $23^{\circ}$ C. The time for non-actively feeding fry is given by the formula: y = 638.459 + 18.097x (Laurence, 1971a). Fry 2-8 days after becoming free-swimming do not appear to feed at night. They conserve energy by settling to the bottom and reducing their digestive and metabolic rates (Laurence, 1971b). The author is unable to determine when the transfer to night feeding takes place.

Larvae bass less than 10 mm in total length eat primarily copepods, cladocerans and rotifers (Rogers, 1968; Mullan and Applegate, 1970; DeRyke, 1923; Emig, 1966; Turner and Kraatz, 1920; Kramer and Smith, 1960b). Bass investigate a forage organism for a second or so before consuming it.

Kramer and Smith (1960b) gave the lengthweight relationship of 3.0-6.0 mm larvae as Log W = -3.79828 + 1.34337 Log L, and 6.4-11.9 mm larvae as Log W = -5.80130 + 3.89555 Log L.

# 3.23 Adolescent phase

Both male and female bass reach the adolescent phase by 40 mm of total length. Kramer and Smith (1960b) gave the length-weight relationship of fish from 12 to 80 mm in total length as Log W = -4.79809 + 2.96211 Log L. They did not find differential growth between males and females. Growth did not correlate with the amount of food in the stomach but growth was positively correlated with the ratio of large to small organisms found in the stomach. In their study Kramer and Smith (1960b) found the differences in relative condition factor (Kn) between geographic areas in a single year were directly related to weight of stomach contents, while differences in condition among years within an area were inversely related to abundance of bass fingerlings.

Different investigators have reported bass to switch from a microcrustacean diet to an insect diet at various lengths as follows: 25-35 mm (Rogers, 1967), 22-75 mm (Marcy, 1953), 30-50 mm (Turner and Kraatz, 1920), 40 mm (Mullan and Applegate, 1970; DeRyké, 1923; Miller and Kramer, 1971), 50 mm (Kramer and Smith, 1962; Applegate <u>et al.</u>, 1967) or 70 mm (MacCammon <u>et al.</u>, 1964). Bass over 50 mm tend to eat fish (Miller and Kramer, 1971; Kramer and Smith, 1962). Kramer and Smith (1960b) concluded that bass remain in broods for 26-31 days (approximately 32 mm) before dispersing.

Ramsey and Smitherman (1971) gave a key for separating juvenile largemouth bass from other <u>Micropterus</u>. Young largemouth bass (16-30 mm) have more than 20 pyloric caeca compared to 13 or less in spotted bass (<u>M. punctatus</u>) (Applegate, 1966).

- 3.3 Adult phase
  - 3.31 Longevity

It is not possible to cite a single value for the average life expectency of bass after they reach maturity. However, most populations contain 6 and 7 year old fish. There is an unproven but general feeling among biologists that fast-growing bass do not live as long as slow-growing bass. The largemouth bass tends to live longer in the northern portion than the southern portion of its range (K. Carlander in manuscript material from "Handbook of freshwater fisheries", Vol. 2). They have been reported to live for 15 years in Wisconsin and 11 years in Louisiana (Bennett, 1937). Evidently male bass do not live as long as female bass (Padfield, 1951). Thus as a year class becomes older, the percentage of males decreases. There is some indication that in California waters the southern subspecies lives longer than the northern subspecies (Smith, 1971).

# 3.32 Hardiness

In general, largemouth bass's tolerance to handling and physical-chemical conditions are intermediate between salmon-shad and cyprinidsictaluridis (Table VII). Using normal precautions they can be kept in covered aquaria.

3.33 Competitors

In its native range the largemouth bass dominates the spawning grounds and competition for spawning area is minimal. It spawns before any of the other centrarchids except for the crappie (<u>Pomxis</u> spp.) and smallmouth bass. Some cyprinids are not temporally or spatially isolated (see 3.16), but they do not seem to interfere with bass spawning.

Most piscivorous fishes such as the crappie, walleye (Stizostedion vitreum), northern pike (Esox lucius), channel catfish (Ictalurus punctatus), white bass (Morone crysops), and striped bass (M. saxatilis), characids, and some chichids eat the same species of forage organisms that the bass does. However, criteria to measure the degree of competition have not been satisfactorily established.

> 3.34 Predators (for predators on eggs and young see 3.16, 4.31)

Except for man there are no significant predators of adult largemouth bass in its native range. In North America few fishes are capable of eating adult largemouth bass. Northern pike, muskellunge (Esox masquinongy), striped bass, or very large largemouth bass are some of the exceptions. Change or control of density or size composition of adult largemouth bass caused by predation has not been documented.

- 3.35 Parasites, diseases, injuries and abnormalities (see 4.42 and 7.6)
- Parasites and diseases

The following list of parasites found in the largemouth bass is from Hoffman (1967) unless otherwise noted.

14

Protozoa Chilodonella cyprini (Moroff) Henneguya mictospora (Kudo) Ichthyophthirius multifilis (first described from France, 1876, but its origin is unknown) <u>Myxobolus</u> inornatus Fish, 1939 <u>Myxobolus</u> sp. Butschli Myxosoma cartilaginis Hoffman, Putz, and Dunbar, 1965 Scyphidia micropteri Surber, 1940 S. tholiformis Surber, 1942 Trichodina domerguei (Wallengren) T. fultoni Davis, 1947 T. myakkae (Mueller, 1937) <u>T. nigra</u> Lom, 1961 T. pediculus (Müller, 1786); Ehrb., 1838 Trematoda Acolpenteron ureteroecetes Fischthal and Allison, 1940 Actinocleidus fusiformis (Mueller, 1934); Mueller, 1937 A. micropteri (?) Azygia angusticauda (Stafford, 1904); Manter, 1926 A. loossii Marshall and Gilbert, 1905 A. micropteri (MacCallum, 1921) A. tereticolle Leidy, 1851 Bucephaloides pusillus (Syn. (Stafford, 1904) Bucephaloides pusillus) Bunodera cornuta (Osborn, 1903) Caecincola parvulus Marshall and Gilbert, 1905 C. wakullata sp. n., See Premvati (1967) Clavunculus bursatus (Mueller, 1936); Mizelle et al., 1956 (Syn. <u>Actinocleidus</u> <u>b.</u>) <u>C. unguis</u> (Mizelle and Cronin, 1943); Mizelle et al., 1956 \*Clinostomum marginatum (Rud., 1819) \*Crassiphiala ambloplitis (?) Crepidostomum cooperi Hopkins, 1931 C. cronutum (Osborn, 1903); Stafford, 1904 C. ictaluri (Surber, 1928) Crepidostomum sp. Braum, 1900 Cryptogonimus chyli Osborn, 1910 \*Diplostomulum scheuringi Hughes, 1929 \*Diplostomulum sp. Hughes, 1929 Gyrodactylus macrochiri Hoffman and Putz, 1964 Leuceruthrus micropteri Marshall and Gilbert, 1905 Microphallus opacus (Ward, 1894); Ward, 1901 <u>Multigonotylus micropteri</u> gen et sp. n., See Premvati (1967) \*<u>Neascus</u> sp. Hughes, 1927 Neochasmus umbellus Van Cleave and Mueller, 1932 Phyllodistomum lohrenzi (Loewen, 1935) P. pearsii Holl, 1929 Pisciamphostoma stunkardi (Holl, 1929); Yamaguti (1953) \*Posthodiplostomum minimum (MacCallum, 1921) Proterometra macrostoma Horsefall, 1933 Rhipidocotyle papillosum (Woodhead, 1929) R. septpapillata Krull, 1934 Sanguinicola huronis Fischthal, 1949 \*Tetracotyle sp. Faust (1918); Hughes (1928)

Urocleidus dispar (Mueller, 1936); Mizelle and Hughes, 1938 (Syn. Onchoclidus d., Haplocleidus d.) U. furcatus (Mueller, 1937); Mizelle and Hughes, 1938 (Syn. <u>Haplocleidus</u> f.) <u>U. principalis</u> (Mizelle, 1936); Mizelle and Hughes, 1938 (Syn. <u>Onchocleidus</u> p., <u>O. contortus</u>) \*Uvulifer ambloplitis (Hughes, 1927); Dubois, 1938 Cestoda Abothrium crassum (?) Bothriocephalus claviceps (Goeze, 1782); Rud., 1810 \*\*B. cuspidatus Cooper, 1917 Hymenolepis sp. Bangham (1951) Ophiovalipora minuta See Norman (1971) Philometra nodulosa Thomas, 1929 \*Proteocephalus ambloplitis (Leidy, 1887); Benedict, 1900 P. fluviatilis Bangham, 1925 P. pearsei LaRue, 1914 Proteocephalus sp. Weinland, 1858 \*Triaenophorus nodulosus Pallas, 1760 Nematoda Camallanus oxycephalus Ward and Magath, 1917 \*\*Camallanus sp. Railliet and Henry, 1915 Capillaria catenata Van Cleave and Mueller, 1932 Contracaecum brachyurum (Ward and Magath, 1917) \*C. spiculigurum (Rud., 1819) \*Contracaecum sp. Railliet and Henry, 1912 Dacnistoides ctylophora Ward and Magath, 1916 Dioctophyma sp. Cyllet - Maygret, 1802 Goegia See Gaines, Ware and Rogers (1973). Philometra cylindracea Ward and Magath, 1916 Philometra nodulosa Thomas, 1929 (Syn. Icthyonema) Rhabdochona decaturensis Gustafon, 1949; See Spall (1968) Spinitectus carolini Holl, 1928 S. gracilis Ward and Magath, 1916 Sprioxys sp. Schneider, 1866 Acanthocephala Echinorhynchus salmonis Müller, 1784 \*Leptorhynchoides thecatus (Linton, 1891); Kostylew, 1924 Neoechinorhynchus cylindratua (Van Cleave, 1913); Van Cleave, 1919 Pomphorhynchus bullocolli (Linkins, 1919); Van Cleave, 1919 Hirudinea Illinobdella moorei (Meyer, 1940); Meyer, 1946 (Syn. Myzobdella m.) Illinobdella sp. Meyer, 1940 Piscicola punctate (Verrill, 1871) Placobdella montifera Moore, 1912 Mollusca Glochidia Lampsilis radiata (Gmelin); See Tedla and Fernando (1969)

# TABLE VII

# Effects of various physical-chemical paremeters on largemouth bass

| Parameter  | Comments  | Reference  |
|--|---|--|
| Antimycin A  | 24 h EC <sub>0</sub> = 0.2 ppb, EC <sub>100</sub> = 1.3 ppb<br>for 1.8-2.9 g fish<br>5 ppb will kill all bass in most pond<br>treatments  | Walker, Lennon and Berger<br>(1964)<br>Berger, Lennon and Hoggan<br>(1969) |
| Aqualin  | 24 h TLm 0.183 mg/l at 22 <sup>0</sup> C<br>96 h TLm 0.160 mg/l   | Louder and McCoy (1963)  |
| Bay 73WP71   | In 48 h 0% mortality at 0.1 mg/l; 100%<br>at 0.25 mg/l  |  |
| Bayer 73   | 95% LC <sub>50</sub> confidence interval at 24 h<br>= 0.099-0.124; 48 h = 0.087-0.109;<br>96 h = 0.076 at 17°C for 4 cm bass  | Marking and Hogan (1967)   |
| Delrad (dehydroabietylamine acetate)                                     | Minimum lethal dose 0.65 mg/l   | Lawrence (1958)  |
| Denuron-TCA  | 24 h EC <sub>10</sub> = $4.2 \text{ mg/1}$ ; 24 h EC <sub>50</sub><br>= $7.4 \text{ mg/1}$ for 10 cm bass   | Walker (1964)  |
| 3-2 Dibrom-Malathion   | 48 h TLm = 0.10 mg/l at $22^{\circ}$ C with 5-10 cm fish  | Hoff and Westman (1965)  |
| Di-N,n, dimethylococamine<br>salt of 3,6-endohexa-<br>hydrophthalic acid | 96 h $LD_{50} = 0.14 \text{ mg/l}$  | Walker (1962)  |
| Diquist  | 24 h TLm = 24 mg/l; 48 h TLm = 11 mg/l;<br>96 h TLm = 7.8 mg/l  | Surber and Pickering (1962   |
| Diquist dibromide  | 96 h TLm = 60 mg/1  | Shealy and Shiflet (1969)  |
| Di Sodium Endothal   | 96 h LD <sub>50</sub> = 120 mg/1  | Walker (1962)  |
| Endosulfin EC 2  | 0.05 mg/l 100% mortality in 24 h  | Mulla, St. Amant and<br>Anderson (1967)                                    |
| Endothal   | 24 h TLm greater than 560 mg/1; 48 h<br>TLm = 320 mg/1; 96 h TLm = 200 mg/1   | Surber and Pickering (1962   |
| Isobornyl thiocyanoacetate   | 100% mortality with 0.7 mg/l at 25°C;<br>100% mortality with 0.8 mg/l at 10°C   | Lewis (1968)   |
| Monurone-TCA   | 24 h EC <sub>50</sub> = 2.7 mg/l for 10 cm bass   | Walker (1964)  |
| Oxygen   | Bass are not adapted for survival in oxygen-depleted waters   | Lewis (1970)   |
|  | No mortality at 250% saturation<br>No mortality when moved from 7.3 to<br>41 mg/l or from 40 to 5.6 mg/l  | Wiebe and McGavock (1932)<br>Wiebe (1931)                                  |
|  | Avoids 1.5 mg/l or less   | Whitmore, Warren and<br>Doudoroff (1960)                                   |
|  | Critical level when acclimated 0.82,<br>0.83, 1.20 mg/l at 25, 30 and 35°C<br>respectively. When not acclimated<br>the critical level of oxygen occurs<br>at 0.92, 1.19 and 1.14 mg/l | Moss and Scott (1961)  |
|  | Growth only 60-75% as rapid at 4 mg/l<br>as at 8 mg/l. Diel fluctuations also<br>also impaired growth   | Stewart, Schumway and<br>Doudoroff (1967)                                  |

TABLE VII continued

| Parameter   | Comments  | Reference   |
|---|---|---|
| Oxygen  | Hatching success reduced at 2.0, 2.1,<br>2.8 mg/l at 15, 20 and 25°C respec-<br>tively. At oxygen levels less than<br>1 mg/l prehatching survival increased<br>with mechanical movement of eggs, but<br>at hatching mechanically moved eggs<br>died at all oxygen levels tested                 | Dudley and Eipper (1975)  |
| pH  | 504 percent mortality below 4.2 and above 10.4  | Swingle (1961)  |
|   | 24 LD <sub>50</sub> at pH = 11.0 for small and large bass   | Swingle (1962)  |
|   | Bass survive a change in pH from 9.5<br>to 6.1 and from 6.1 to 9.5  | Wiebe (1931)  |
|   | No reproduction at pH below 5.0 or<br>above 10.0  | Swingle (1949b)   |
| Picloram (4-amino-3,5,6-<br>Trachloropicolinic acid)        | 24 h TLm = $19.7 \text{ mg/l at } 23^{\circ}\text{C};$<br>48 h TLm = $13.1 \text{ mg/l at } 23^{\circ}\text{C}$   | Kenaga (1969)   |
| Quinaldine  | 95% LC <sub>50</sub> range for 24 h 8.8-11.3 mg/1;<br>for 96 h 7.7-10.5 mg/1  | Marking (1969)  |
| Rotenone formulations<br>Pro Noxfish<br>Noxfish<br>Powdered | 24 h $LD_{50} = 0.081 \text{ mg/l at } 22^{\circ}C$<br>24 h $LD_{50} = 0.147 \text{ mg/l at } 22^{\circ}C$<br>24 h $LD_{50} = 0.164 \text{ mg/l at } 22^{\circ}C$   | Hester (1960)   |
| Salinity  | <pre>11-13% sea water low reproduction<br/>9-10% sea water high reproduction<br/>Adults are common in 12.4% of sea water<br/>Adults can withstand 25% sea water but<br/>may cease feeding<br/>Eggs hatch at 20% sea water butnot 30%<br/>96 h TLm = 38% of sea water for<br/>35-41 mm fry</pre> | Martin (1959)<br>Schwartz (1964)<br>Wollitz (1962)<br>Tebo and McCoy (1964) |
| Silt  | Visible adverse behavioural reaction at 20 000 mg/l   | Wallen (1951)   |
| Simizine  | 96 h LD <sub>50</sub> = 45 mg/1   | Walker (1964)   |
| Sodium cyanide  | Bass are less sensitive than carp,<br>Cyprinus carpio   | Bridges (1958)  |
|   | At 0.1 mg/l NaCh killed gizzard shad,<br>Dorosoma cepedianum but not bass   | Huish (1958)  |
| Temperature   | Bass can withstand a wide range of<br>temperatures if acclimated, but<br>handling below 4.5°C and above 25.5°C<br>is detrimental  | Wilson (1950)   |
| TFM   | 1-1.8 mg/l killed less than 25%   | Marking <u>et al.</u> (1970)  |
| Turbidity   | Direct lethal effect caused by gill<br>filament clogging at an average<br>concentration of 101 000 mg/l   |   |

17

Crustacea <u>Achtheres micropteri</u> Wright, 1882 <u>Argulus appendiculosus</u> Wilson, 1907 <u>A. flavescens</u> Wilson, 1916 <u>A. mississippiensis</u> Wilson (1914); See Norman (1971) <u>Ergasilus caeruleus</u> Wilson, 1911 <u>E. centrarchidarum</u> Wright, 1882 <u>E. nigritis</u> (nigratus) Wilson, 1916 <u>E. lizae</u> Kroyer 1863; See Kelly and Allison (1963) <u>Ergasilis</u> sp. Nordmann, 1832 <u>Lernaea anomala</u> Wilson, 1917 <u>L. cruciata</u> (LeSueur, 1824) L. cyprinacea Linnaeus, 1761

#### Fungi

Saprolegnia spp. Branchiomyces sanguinis See Meyer and Robinson, 1973

### Virus -

Lymphocystis See Weissenberg (1945)

## Bacteria

- $\frac{\text{Aeromonas}}{(1970)} \frac{\text{liquifaciens}}{(1970)} \text{ See Brauhn and Ray}$
- <u>Flexibacter columnaris</u> (Syn. <u>Cryptophaga</u> <u>c.</u>, <u>Chondrococcus</u> <u>c.</u>) See Isom (1960) <u>Staphylococcus</u> <u>spidermis</u> See Brauhn and Ray (1970)
- Pseudomonas spp.
- Arthropoda
- <u>Sebekia</u> <u>oxycephala</u> (Diesing) Savabon, 1922; See Dukes, Shealy and Rogers (1971)
- \* Larval form
- \*\* Immature

Ordinarily parasitic infections of bass are relatively light and do not cause mortality. Only a few parasites such as <u>Ichthyopthirius</u> <u>multifilis</u>, <u>Chondrococcus columnaris</u> and <u>Lampsilis radiata</u> have been reported to cause epizootics of subadult and adult bass in natural populations (Allison and Kelley, 1963; Isom, 1960; Telda and Fernando, 1969). <u>Saprolegnia</u> spp. has been reported to kill eggs (see 3.21). See 7.6 for parasite control in culture situations.

The metacercaria of <u>Clinostomum marginatum</u> (yellow grub) is not harmful if eaten by humans but the fish flesh is aesthetically unpleasing when heavily infected (Taber, 1972). The plerocercoid of the bass tapeworm <u>Proteocephalus</u> <u>ambloplitis</u> may reduce fertility of largemouth bass (Mraz and Cooper, 1957). When bass are introduced into trout waters the plerocercoid may infect the trout (Becker and Brunson, 1968). The modes of transmittal may be direct as in the case of bacteria and many protozoan parasites, or indirect as in the case of trematodes and cestodes. The copepod, <u>Cyclops</u>, and the amphipod, <u>Hyalella knickerbocker</u>, are the source of infection of <u>P.</u> ambloplitis (Bangham, 1927).

# - Injuries and abnormalities

No regularly occurring abnormalities have been reported in the largemouth bass. However, Reid (1951) reported a fibroma type, Mawdesley-Thomas (1975) a melanoma type, and Mawdesley-Thomas (1972) a lipoma type neoplasm on the side of a bass. James (1946a) has reported ovatestes. A doublemouth adult bass was cited by Herman, Holtman and O'Donnell (1947) and Allen and Neil (1953) noted a zanthic bass.

Artificially induced hybrids are frequently abnormal and die (Table VI). Under experimental conditions vertebrae injury has been caused by electric shock (Spencer, 1967). Dudley (1969) and Dudley and Eipper (1975) reported that embryos held under low oxygen were frequently abnormal. White blindness frequently occurs in bass that are fed on horse liver (Allison, 1951).

# 3.4 Nutrition and growth

3.41 Feeding

Like many predatory fishes, the bass has a large mouth and a large, well developed, elastic stomach. It does not bite off chunks of food, but rather swallows a whole organism. According to Lawrence (1958) a bass can swallow a fish whose maximum depth is equal to the mouth width of the bass (see 1.31).

If available, the size of forage that bass eat increases with bass size (Rogers, 1968; Lewis <u>et al.</u>, 1974; Snow, 1971; Schneider, 1971; Turner and Kraatz, 1920). There is some evidence that when feeding on small forage items food intake is calorically controlled. When bass were fed bullfrog tadpoles (<u>Rana catesbeiana</u>) or green sunfish (<u>Lepomis cyanellus</u>) ad <u>libitum</u> they consumed on a daily basis 7.9% of their body weight in tadpoles and 4.3% of their body weight in green sunfish. This corresponded to 0.023 kcal/g body weight/day of tadpoles and 0.025 kcal/g body weight/day of green sunfish (Kirk, 1967). As temperature decreases the size of forage organisms consumed by bass decreases (Wright, 1970).

Lewis <u>et al.</u> (1961) and Lewis and Helms (1964) found that bass in small tanks preferred golden shiners to other forage. However, in small ponds bullfrog tadpoles, crayfish, young black bullheads (<u>Ictalurus melas</u>) and green sunfish were preferred in that order. They suggested that the difference in food preference was due to the increased mobility of shiners and other fishes, which made them less vulnerable in the pond situation. Thus selectivity of food may be influenced by the vulnerability of the prey species present. To date all properties which constitute "vulnerability" have not been defined. However, Lagler and DeRoth (1952) concluded that bass are a more effective predator on prey with a terete body shape than those with a strongly compressed form. Goodyear (1972) reported that if a prey species behaves unnaturally, predation by bass with increase.

The bass exhibits at least two types of feeding behaviour (Vanderhorst, 1967). In the "hunger" motivated type the bass goes through a fairly lengthy series of preparatory movements which involves a rocking motion of the body, and flaring the gill covers. When bass exhibit this behaviour, forage fish show a marked escape response. A second type of feeding behaviour is reflex-like strike response (Lewis et al., 1961). Characteristically orientation and positioning occurs before the attack. Nyberg (1971) found that the distance from the prey at which the final attack was initiated was greatest when the bass was travelling toward the prey at a high velocity. Attacks initiated at a distance greater than one fourth the length of the bass's head usually failed. Once the jaws begin to open the sequential movement is stereotype. Bass either "over swim" their prey, suck them in or both. Crayfish were swallowed tail first in 97 percent of the cases and gizzard shad (Dorosoma cepedianum) headfirst in 66 percent (Zweiacker, 1972).

The bass is not a continuous feeder, When stomachs are collected from the wild by electrofishing it is common for approximately 50 percent of them to be empty (Zweiacker and Summerfelt, 1974; Dubets, 1954; Lewis <u>et al.</u>, 1974). Bass feed both at night and during the day. Our experiments show they are capable of feeding on bluegill sunfish and growing in complete darkness at clay turbidities of at least 140 JTU. A midmorning and afternoon period of increased feeding activity has been indicated by Zweiacker and Summerfelt (1974), but this phenomenon needs further investigation.

Lewis <u>et</u> <u>al.</u> (1974) reported that once a gizzard shad is ingested, the bass characteristically does not eat again for approximately 40 h. This apparently does not hold true when small forage fishes or crayfishes are being utilized (Snow, 1971; Lewis <u>et al.</u>, 1974).

Bass do not feed when they are spawning (see 3.16), or at water temperatures above 37°C or below 5°C (Markus, 1932). Even though small bass tend to feed more at lower temperatures than large bass (Markus, 1932), all sizes of bass tend to feed very little during the winter at northerm latitudes (Keast, 1968). They consume approximately three times as much food at 20°C as at 10°C (Hathaway, 1927).

Bass stop feeding when dissolved oxygen approaches 1 mg/l (Snow, 1961). See 3.22 for nonfeeding of larval bass and 3.32 for effect of salinity on feeding.

#### 3.42 Food

The enzyme complement of the bass limits the type of food it can utilize. The pyloric caeca are sources of trypsin and lipase. Protein is absorbed primarily in the stomach and fat in the intestine (Beamish, 1972). The enzymes associated with carbohydrate break-down, such as amylase, maltase, lactase and invertase, are not found in bass (Sarbahi, 1951).

Emig (1966) and K. Carlander (in manuscript material from "Handbook of freshwater fisheries", Vol. 2) have summarized many of the numerous reports on the food organisms eaten by largemouth bass. See 3.22 and 3.23 for feeding of larvae and subadult bass. In general, adult bass eat fishes and crayfishes. However, just about every macro-organism which is found in fresh water has been found in the stomach of bass.

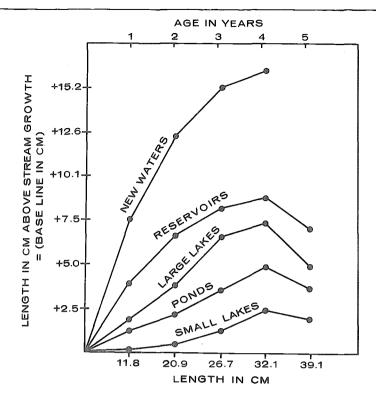
Lewis <u>et al.</u> (1974) reported food intake values as high as 25 percent of body weight for 90 g bass, but the average for 90-450 g, 450-900 g 900+ g bass was 9.2, 7.6 and 3.0 percent respectively.

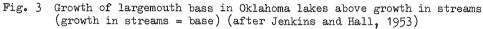
There is a positive curvalinear relationship between temperature and digestion rate (Table VIII). These values are similar to those reported by Seaburg and Moyle (1964), Hunt (1960), Markus (1932), and Beamish (1972).

Markus (1932) found no difference in the digestive rate of 45 g versus 175 g bass and Beamish (1972) found no difference in the digestive rate of digestive efficiency of 7 g versus 91 g bass. Larger meals within the range of 2-8 percent of body rate require longer to digest, but the absorption efficiencies of protein-N, lipid, or energy do not differ significantly (Beamish, 1972).

#### 3.43 Growth rate

The growth rate of largemouth bass is variable. Usually they grow faster in a new lake than in an old lake (Figs.3 and 4). In established populations their growth rate is usually faster in large bodies of water than small ones (Fig. 4). At the end of 1 year a largemouth bass may be 5-35 cm in length. This variation appears to be better correlated with





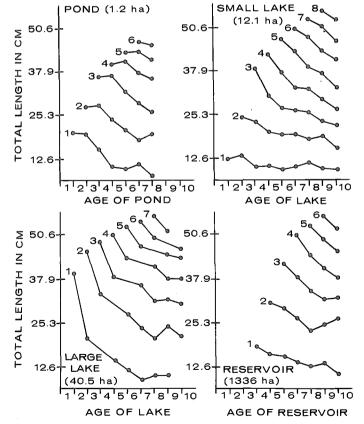


Fig. 4 History of annual growth of largemouth bass following impoundment of bodies of water in Oklahoma (after Jenkins and Hall, 1953)

| TABLE V | III |
|---------|-----|
|---------|-----|

| Effect | of | water | temperature | on  | the   | digestiv  | re rate | of | 25-27 | cm | bass |
|--------|----|-------|-------------|-----|-------|-----------|---------|----|-------|----|------|
|        |    |       | (after Mo   | lná | r and | i Tolg, 1 | 962)    |    |       |    |      |

| Temperature (°C)              | 5    | 10  | 15  | 20  | 25  |
|-------------------------------|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Time to empty stomach (hours) | 110  | 50  | 37  | 24  | 19  |
| Standard deviation (hours)    | 12.9 | 6.9 | 8.3 | 4.2 | 2.2 |

density and food supply than with digestive function or temperature. When bass have been fed fish flesh, conversion rates of 2.5-5.6 have been reported (Snow, 1962; Thompson, 1941; Prather, 1951).

If a forage population is made up of only large organisms, small bass may be underfed. However, Lewis <u>et al.</u> (1974) reported another situation in which large bass were less well nourished than small bass. They found that when bass feed on large organisms they characteristically eat only one. Under such conditions, if the forage is fairly uniform in size and both large and small bass utilize it, the daily food intake of the small bass as a percentage of its body weight can be high, while that for the large bass is low.

Reviewing data from K. Carlander (manuscript material from "Handbook of freshwater fisheries", Vol. 2), one finds that in general the northern subspecies tends to grow larger in the southern than in the northern portion of its range.

Even though several researchers have investigated the relative growth rates of the northern and southern subspecies of the largemouth bass (Clugston, 1964; Smith, 1971; Addison and Spencer, 1972), the evidence indicating differences in rate of growth is inconclusive. In Californian waters there is some indication that larger specimens of the southern subspecies occur because it is harder to catch and lives longer than the northern subspecies (Smith, 1971). In cold climates the southern subspecies does not appear to survive as well as the northern subspecies (Stevenson, 1972).

The literature on the relative growth of male and female bass is contradictory. Pardue and Hester (1967) reported that up to 0.3 kg the males are heavier than females. Padfield (1951) found that females up to 6 years old are slightly longer than males of the same age. Other investigators have reported no difference in growth rate between the sexes (Kramer and Smith, 1960a; Hill, 1939; Roseberry, 1952; Thompson and Bennett, 1949; Eschmeyer, 1940; Stroud, 1948; Beckman, 1949). In most studies the body-scale relationship was shown to be a straight line through the zero intercept (K. Carlander, manuscript material from "Handbook of freshwater fisheries", Vol. 2). However, a Frazer type correction has been used in many studies, for example, Cross (1951), Zweiacker (1972), Thompson (1964), LaFaunce, Kinsey and Chadwick (1964), Manning (1951), Elder and Lewis (1955), and Carter (1967).

Scale formation is at 18-26 mm (Stroud, 1948; Klavano, 1958). Scales from above the lateral line gave lower calculated lengths than scales from below the lateral line (Klavano, 1958).

The approximate relationship between total length (TL), standard length (SL) and fork length (FL) is TL = 1.22 SL up to a TL of 200 mm, TL = 1.215 SL up to 380 mm, and TL = 1.21 SL over 380 mm, and that TL = 1.08 fork length (K. Carlander, manuscript material from "Handbook of freshwater fisheries", Vol. 2). Bennett (1971) states that bass between 12.6 and 37.9 cm in total length, and coefficient of condition K (based on total length in cm, and weight in grams) of 0.97-1.25 denotes fish in poor flesh, 1.27-1.52 fish of average plumpness, and 1.55-1.80 a very fat fish. However, Buck and Thoits (1970) have demonstrated that the fastest growth rates of bass were not always accompanied by the highest condition factor.

3.44 Metabolism

- Metabolic rates

Primarily due to differences in the thermal, handling and feeding history of experimental fish as well as differences in experimental design, there is considerable variation in the reported oxygen uptake of largemouth bass (Table IX). Beamish (1970) determined the effect of swimming speed, weight and temperature on oxygen consumption (Table X). The logarithm of oxygen consumption for a given swimming speed and temperature increased linearly with the logarithm of weight. Regression slopes were considerably less than 1. For a given swimming speed oxygen consumption increased linearly with temperature from 10°C to  $34^{\circ}C$ .

#### TABLE IX

| Size<br>(g) | Temperature<br>(C) | Standard<br>(mg0 <sub>2</sub> /kg/h) | Active<br>(mg0 <sub>2</sub> /kg/h) | Reference                   |
|-------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 3850        | 17.8-19.3          | $65 \div 2.3 \text{ se}^{a/2}$       |                                    | Clausen (1936)              |
| 4.7-23.9    | 25                 | 89-156 SE 0.002-0.005                | ę.c.e                              | Moss and Scott (1961)       |
| 12.2-22.6   | 30                 | 101-129 SE 0.002-0.005               |                                    | (as above)                  |
| 62.7-97.6   | 35                 | 112-150 SE 0.002-0.003               | gan a                              | (as above)                  |
| 6-10        | 5                  | 38                                   | 48                                 | Johnson and Charlton (1960) |
| 6-10        | 12                 | 130                                  | 198                                | (as above)                  |
| 6-10        | 17                 | 134                                  | 250                                | (as above)                  |
| 6-10        | 22                 | 185                                  | 303                                | (as above)                  |
| 6-10        | 29                 | 320                                  | 450                                | (as above)                  |
| 150         | 10                 | 80                                   | 187                                | Beamish (1970)              |
| 150         | 15                 | 97                                   | 257                                | (as above)                  |
| 150         | 20                 | 120                                  | 345                                | (as above)                  |
| 150         | 25                 | 127                                  | 375                                | (as above)                  |
| 150         | 30                 | 170                                  | 540                                | (as above)                  |
| 150         | 34                 | 178                                  | 533                                | (as above)                  |
| 1.6         | 20                 |                                      | 456 <b></b> 750                    | MacLeod (1967)              |
| 11.8        | 22-24              | tond                                 | 720 individually                   | Parker (1973)               |
| 11.8        | 22-24              | tona.                                | 710 grouped                        | (as above)                  |

Oxygen consumption of largemouth bass

a/ SE = standard error

Active oxygen consumption increased linearly with weight for each temperature when expressed on a logarithmic grid. Equations for the regressions are from Beamish (1970) except where noted.

(°c) 10 log Y = -0.6681 ± 0.9725 log X 15 log Y = -0.5590 ± 0.9855 log X 20 log Y = -0.0417 ± 0.8068 log X 25 log Y = -0.2411 ± 0.9190 log X 25 log Y = -1.2140 ± 0.7980 log X (0'Hara, 1966) 30 log Y = -0.0143 ± 0.8836 log X 34 log Y = -0.1336 ± 0.9358 log X

Oxygen consumption of largemouth bass was not altered when the concentration of oxygen was increased to 150 percent saturation.

Energy available for swimming, termed metabolic scope of activity, is calculated by subtraction of standard from active oxygen consumption. According to Beamish (1970) the scope of activity increased with temperature from 10 to 30°C and decreased from 30 to 34°C.

Laurence (1969) has determined the oxygen consumption of individual eggs and larva bass (Table XI).

In general small bass have a higher per gram oxygen requirement than do large bass (0'Hara, 1966). However, Moss and Scott (1961) found that bass between 15 g and 50 g showed no change in standard metabolic rate with increased size, but below 15 g metabolic rate varied inversely with weight. O'Hara (1966) reported that tissue respiration does not change with size of fish when they are larger than 50 g (2.8  $\mu$ l/mg dry/h). Bass less than 10 g had a lower respiration ratio (2.0  $\mu$ l/mg dry/h). Moss and Scott also noted no daily endogenous rhythmus in standard oxygen consumption of non-fed fish. However, Clausen (1933, 1936) stated that daily standard oxygen consumption peaked at 06.00 and 21.00 h.

Active metabolism for individual and grouped 11.8 g bass was found to be the same (Parker, 1973; Table VII).

The routine oxygen consumption of largemouth bass decreased from  $8.53 \pm 1.55$  95% CI to  $2.70 \pm 0.36$  95% CI mg  $0_2/h$  after 144 h of food deprivation. The mathematical relationship between routine oxygen consumption and time of food deprivation is  $Y_i = a + be^{CX_i}$  where  $X_i$  is the time of deprivation in hours, a = 2.97, b = 5.73 and C = -0.0367 ( $\xi R^2 = 1.04$ ) (Glass, 1968)

Denyes and Joseph (1956) found no relationship between oxygen content of branchial blood and water temperatore or oxygen concentration in the water. Oxygen concentration in the blood ranged from 5.70to 28.75 cc/l.

Fuhrman <u>et al.</u> (1944) found that when  $\log 00_2$  of excised bass brain is plotted as a function of temperature, the curve is a straight line with a positive slope over the range 10-35°C. There is

| TABLE | ×    |  |
|-------|------|--|
|       | ABLI |  |

The relationship between weight (X in g) and oxygen consumption (Y in mg/h) at different swimming speeds and temperatures (after Beamish, 1970)

| Acclimation<br>temperature<br>(°C) | Swimming<br>speed<br>(cm/s)a/ | <u>Total length (cm)</u><br>mean <u>SDb</u> / | n) Weight (g)<br>mean SD | Regression           | Correlation<br>coefficient | 95% confidence<br>interval of<br>slope |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 10                                 | 30                            | 22.1 3.5                                      |                          | Y = -0.1137 + 0.6557 | 0.694                      | 0.0418                                 |
| 15                                 | 30                            | 22.5 4.0                                      | 164.6 81.2               | 0.0926 + 0.6056      | 0.908                      | 0.0120                                 |
| 15                                 | 40                            | 23.3 3.5                                      |                          | Y = 0.1894 + 0.6014  | 0.822                      | 0.0854                                 |
| 15                                 | 50                            |   |                          | Y = 0.1936 + 0.6264  | 0.865                      | 0.0224                                 |
| 20                                 | 30                            |   |                          | Y = 0.0867 + 0.6471  | 0.910                      | 0.0214                                 |
| 20                                 | 40                            |   |                          | Y = 0.2695 + 0.6007  | 0.854                      | 0.0281                                 |
| 25                                 | 30                            |   |                          | T = -0.0594 + 0.7475 | 0.941                      | 0.0288                                 |
| 25                                 | 40                            | 20.0 5.1                                      |                          | Y = 0.0785 + 0.6908  | 0.938                      | 0.1091                                 |
| 30                                 | 30                            |   |                          | Y = 0.2000 + 0.6593  | 0.790                      | 0.0270                                 |
| 30                                 | 40                            |   |                          | Y = 0.4798 + 0.5580  | 0.740                      | 0.0289                                 |
| 30                                 | 50                            |   |                          | Y = 0.4263 + 0.6217  | 0.759                      | 0.0290                                 |
| 34                                 | 30                            |   |                          | T = 0.1338 + 0.7062  | 0.548                      | 0.0430                                 |
| 34                                 | 40                            | 21.4 3.0                                      |                          | Y = 0.2920 +         | 0.700                      | 0.0390                                 |

6-10 g largemouth bass to be 9.6, 22.3, 24.3, 41.5 and 20.5 cm/s JOHNEON AND UNARITON (1700) reported cruising speed of at 5, 12, 17, 22 and 29°C respectively SD = standard deviation ने वि

#### TABLE XI

Average oxygen consumption per 24 hours of a single largemouth bass egg and larva at 19  $\pm$  0.5 °C (after Laurence, 1969)

| Time interval<br>after fertilization<br>(h) |                 | Oxygen consumed<br>(µl) |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 0-24<br>2448                                |                 | 0.057<br>0.519          |
| 48-72                                       |                 | 0.725                   |
| 72-96                                       | (hatching)      | 1.915                   |
| 96-120                                      | /               | 1.478                   |
| 120-144                                     |                 | 1.256                   |
| 144168                                      |                 | 1.314                   |
| 168-192                                     | (mouth formed)  | 2.059                   |
| 192-216                                     |                 | 1.822                   |
| 216-240                                     | (free-swimming) | 2.688                   |
| 240-264                                     |                 | 1.911                   |
| 264-288                                     |                 | 3.071                   |
| 288–312                                     | (yolk absorbed) | 2.970                   |

a sharp decline at  $40^{\circ}$ C. Brain'acetylcholinesterase in inhibited <u>in vivo</u> by organic phosphorus insecticides (Weiss, 1961).

- Maintenance

Niimi and Beamish (1974) investigated changes in growth and proximate body composition of largemouth bass of 8-150 g, between  $18^{\circ}$ C and  $30^{\circ}$ C. They found that:

"... for most weight, growth of fish was highest at 25°C, and lowest in fish at 18°C. This was attributed in part to a higher satiation feeding level at 25°C. For a fixed level of feeding, growth rate was highest for fish held at 18°C.

Lipid content increased with feeding level and was highest at 18°C. Moisture content varied inversely with lipid content. Protein and ash content did not vary appreciably with temperature, body weight, or feeding level.

Maintenance requirement of bass, expressed as grams per day, was about twice that lost during food deprivation, but only slightly different when expressed as dilocalories per day.

Standard metabolism accounted for 50% of intake energy near maintenance, but only 10% at the satiation feeding level. Growth requirements increased from zero at mainte-nance to 40% of intake energy at satiation feeding".

Beamish (1974) found that apparent specific dynamic action (SDA) rose curvilinearly with ration size. For a fixed feeding rate as a percent of body weight per day, apparent SDA increased curvilinearly with the weight of bass. Apparent SDA expressed did not differ significantly with weight of fish or meal size (SDA  $\pm$  SD was 14.9  $\pm$  4.19% of the energy ingested). With swimming speeds from 1.4 to 2.5 BL/s, their was no difference in apparent SDA of similar size bass fed a ration of 4 percent body weight/day.

In bass fed on emerald shiners (<u>Notropis</u> <u>atherinoides</u>) Beamish (1972) estimated faecal energy loss to be 10.4 percent of the ingested energy. Non-faecal loss was calculated at 7.9 percent of ingested energy (Niimi and Beamish, 1974). Thus metabolizable energy in bass represents 81.7 percent of that consumed and apparent SDA accounts for 14.2 percent of the metabolizable energy (Beamish, 1974).

- Carbohydrate and steroid

In exercised bass liver glycogen decreased by 35 percent at 20°C and 83 percent at 5°C. Muscle glycogen also decreased with exercise. Blood glucose in exercised fish increased more at 20°C than at 5°C. Muscle glycogen of unexercised fish decreased with temperature. Blood glucose in unexercised fish was lower at 20°C than at 5°C. With exercise, blood lactic acid increased more at 5°C than 20°C (Dean and Goodnight, 1964).

Blondin <u>et</u> <u>al.</u> (1966) demonstrated that sterol biosynthesis in bass follows the same metabolic pathway as has been demonstrated for mammals. Thus

# FIR/S115 Largemouth bass

in vivo 2-C<sup>14</sup>-mevalonic acid served as a precursor to lipid materials in the liver. Addition of cofactors are not necessary with liver homogenates but additional ATP and NADPH did increase incorporation. Squalene, lanosterol and cholesterol were identified as metabolites of mevalonic acid and 7-dehydrocholesterol was converted to cholesterol.

- Endocrine systems and hormones (for osmotic tolerances see Table VII).

Ovulation in largemouth bass was induced by injection of bass pituitary gland, HCG, LH, FSH, growth hormone and prolactin (Stevens, 1970). The possibility exists that LH occurred as a contaminate in all of the preparations.

Due to the deep-seated position of the pituitary gland in the largemouth bass, hypophysectomized individuals died. Female bass treated with Methallibure (I.C.I. 33828) did not ovulate (Stevens, 1970).

Bass produced more milt after injection of 4 000-8 000 IU of HCG/kg than did non-injected bass (Wilbur and Langford, 1974).

For induced spawning of largemouth bass with hormones see 7.4.

3.5 <u>Behaviour</u> (for feeding behaviour see 3.41, for reproduction behaviour see 3.13, 3.21)

When both a large and small bass are placed in an aquarium the large fish usually becomes dominate.

3.51 Migration and local movement

Recapture of previously marked fish in large lakes has yielded some information on movement of bass. Rawstron (1967) found that the majority of bass moved 1.1 km. In a study by Hancock (1956) bass averaged 1.6 km of movement between captures. Averages of 6.4 km were found by Eschmeyer (1942) and Dequine and Hall (1950). Schumacher and Eschmeyer (1942) found that 90 percent of the recovered bass had moved 25.6 km in 1 year.

Some authors working on lakes less than 20 ha have reported home ranges of approximately 100 m (Lewis and Flickinger, 1967; Warden and Lorio, 1975). Lewis and Flickinger (1967) calculated that 1.2 percent of the bass population was on the shoreline at any one time (except when spawning), therefore 150 m of shoreline was available per bass. If the entire population had been on the shoreline only 1.25 m would have been available for each bass. The considerable variations in the reported distances that bass move would be explained if, as proposed by Fetterolf (1952), there are two populations of bass, one that "wanders" and one that stays in a given area. A shifting type of "home range" as found by Warden (1973) would also explain many of the above results.

In the spring, when bass are moving into the shallow water to spawn and the entire adult population is on the shoreline, large numbers move out of lakes over weirs and spillways (Lewis, Heidinger and Konikoff, 1968; Clark, 1942; Louder, 1958; Elser, 1961). Most of the escapement takes place during the crepuscular period (Lewis, Heidinger and Konikoff, 1968).

During the winter bass tend to move into the warm water discharge of electrical power generating plants. In many cases this can result in excellent sport fishing (Gibbons <u>et al.</u>, 1972). Warden (1973) found at temperatures above  $27^{\circ}$ C that diurnal movement decreased and nocturnal movement increased, at temperatures below 10°C all movement decreased.

3.52 Schooling (for schooling of fry see 3.23)

Observing the escape of fish over spillways, Lewis, Heidinger and Konikoff (1968) reported that the fish aggregated in the current at the lip of the spillway before escapement. They also may school and move long distances when chasing such forage fish as the threadfin shad (Dorosoma petenense).

At the present time separate stocks of bass are not recognized in the reservoir habitat.

In the classical sense of the term bass aggregate in the warm water behind electrical power generating plants (see 3.51), and in coves where they spawn (see 3.16). When water temperatures drop below 10 C in large main stream reservoirs in North America, bass tend to move into the open water of the reservoir. They aggregate over 30-60 m water at depths of at least 10 m. Usually they are associated with brush; for example, tree tops. However, some bass can be found in shallow waters all year (Cady, 1945). It is becoming evident that bass should be considered an aggregating fish rather than a strictly solitary fish.

Artificial reefs or shelters have been successfully used to attract bass (Rodenheffer, 1940, 1941, 1945) for a number of years. Crumpton and Wilbur (1974) found a significant (P = 0.05, t = 3.051) increase (1.7 times) in catch rate when experienced anglers fished artificial structures versus natural structures.

> 3.53 Responses to stimuli (see Table VII, 3.44, 3.51, 3.52, 5.42)

- Environmental stimuli

Largemouth bass have been captured at depths of 23 m (Cady, 1945).

Thermal preferences in the field have been reported as 26-28°C by Dendy (1946) while laboratory thermal preferences of 30-32°C are reported by Ferguson (1958) citing Fry (MS. 1950).

The largemouth bass can distinguish different wave lengths of light (Brown, 1937) but the exact wave lengths that they can detect at various intensities has not been determined. Both rods and cones are present. The cones are in patterns of single and double. No new elements are added with age (Shafer, 1900).

Cummings (1968) postulates that the specific pattern of diurnal variation in swimming activity in bass under natural conditions contains three components: (a) direct response to illumination; (b) a deep-seated, phase-non-labile, 24 hour fluctuation, apparently due to a response to subtle geophysical variations; (c) a phase-labile component which has the tendency to repeat on successive days the pattern imposed during the previous 2 or 3 days.

Nothing is known about the bass' ability to detect sound, but since they do not possess a Weberian apparatus one would suspect they could detect frequencies from 500 to 3 000 Hz with their inner ear.

The acoustico-lateralis system of the largemouth bass has been described by Branson and Moore (1962). There are 11 infraorbital canaliculi and 12 preoperculomandibular pores. The lachrynal neuromasts are of moderate size but shallower than in other <u>Micropterus</u>. The number of supporting cells in relation to sensory elements is 57:23.

The anatomy of the largemouth bass olfactory organs has been described by Eaton (1956). Seven epithelial folds radiate, propeller-like, from a region approximately under the anterior naris. At the posterior end of the nasal sac are found apertures of two accessory pouches, one extends mediad, the other ventro-laterad. The olfactory nerve passes back within the wall that separates the two apertures. Alarm substance(s) have not been demonstrated in the largemouth bass.

- Artificial stimuli

Schools of larval largemouth bass can be displaced by a moving 60-150 W incandescent light source. A point source of light is most effective. Young bass tend to prefer a higher illumination than adult bass, but adult bass also display positive phototaxis. Angling under a light is not as effective in turbid water as it is in clear water. Bass appear to be most active under a light from twilight until 2 hours after nightfall and during the last hour of darkness before dawn (Fore, 1969). - Electrical (see 3.54)

Capture by electrofishing with a 2 500 W 60 Hz alternating current does not sterilize the bass (Elder, 1954). Bass held between electrodes spaced 4.7 cm apart were not killed with a 5 min exposure to 3 phase, 180 Hz, 3.1 amp 230 V alternating current (Spencer, 1967).

For a given power output alternating current covers a larger effective area than direct current (Novotny and Preigel, 1974). As the pulse rate of direct current is increased, the power requirement to stun the fish decreases (Novotny and Preigel, 1974; Edwards and Higgins, 1973). Large bass are easier to stun than small bass. Evidently the voltage drop across the fish is very important. With alternating current a drop of 1-2 V/2.53 cm is required.

3.54 Learning

Bass do not learn to do a task as quickly as bluegill sunfish (Lepomis macrochirus). In a single hooking avoidance test, isolated bass made more errors than bluegill (Witt, 1949). Radabaugh (1970) tested the relative learning ability of bass and bluegill for three simple tasks. The performance of the bluegill was far superior to that of the bass. Neither Farabee (1970) nor Radabaugh (1970) found any difference between the learning ability of the male versus the female bass. Individual bass do not have equal learning abilities. A high percentage of the bass used by Radabaugh never mastered any of the three learning tasks. Also, some bass never learn to utilize artificial feed (Snow, 1964; Lewis, Heidinger and Konikoff. 1969).

#### 4 POPULATION

4.1 Structure

#### 4.11 Sex ratio

The sex ratio of fish less than 5 years old has been reported to be approximately 1:1 (Cross, 1951). However, Bryant and Houser (1971) reported the female to male ratio up to 6 years of age to be 1:4, 1:2, 1:5, 2:3, 2:7 and 6:0 respectively. Very old specimens are usually females (see 3.31). At any given time there are usually more males than females on the spawning grounds (see 3.16).

> 4.12 Age composition (see maturity 3.12; longevity 3.31)

The majority of bass both by number and weight in a population which has completed at least one generation cycle is less than 5 years old (Table XII).

| TABLE | XII |
|-------|-----|
|       |     |

Structure of mature bass populations

| Reservoir (U.S.A.)  | $\frac{\% \text{ by number in each year class}}{1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5 \ 6 \ 7}$ | Reference   |
|---|---|---|
| Wappapella, MO<br>Clearwater, MO<br>Lake Carl Blackwell, OK<br>Third Sister, MI | $\begin{array}{rrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrrr$                        | Anderson (1974)<br>(as above)<br>Summerfelt (1975)<br>Brown and Ball (1943) |
|   | $\frac{\%}{1}$ by weight in each year class<br>1 2 3 4 5 6 7                | Total<br>kg/ha  |
| Deerren AD  | 10 51 26 5 3 3 1  | 10.5 Calculated from Bryant   |
| Beaver, AR  |   | and Houser (1971)   |

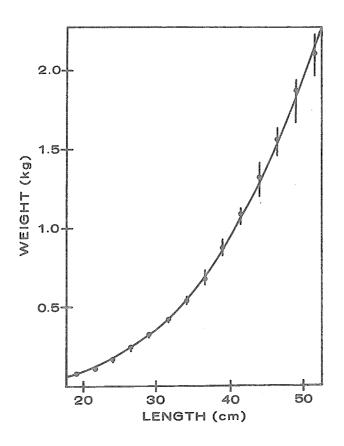


Fig. 5 Average length-weight relationship for largemouth bass. Vertical lines represent the central 50 percent range (after Anderson, 1975)

| XIII  |  |
|-------|--|
| TABLE |  |

Age and growth of largemouth bass

|      |                              |      | Чo   | Total 1 | length | in mm  | a<br>t | each ; | annulus | su  |     |  |
|------|------------------------------|------|------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-----|-----|--|
|      | баттерот                     | -    | 5    | m       | 4      | Ś      | 9      |        | ω       | 6   | 10  | Keference                                  |
|      | U.S.A.                       |      |      |         |        |        |        |        |         |     |     |  |
| AR   | (Ft. Smith Lake)             | 94   | 190  | 269     | 325    | 391    | 498    |        |         |     |     | Trenary (1958)                             |
| CA   | (Folsom Lake)                | 152  | 284  | 351     | 399    | 434    | 465    |        |         |     |     | Tharratt (1966)                            |
| CA   | (Sutherland Lake)            | 178  | 312  | 391     | 447    | 495    |        |        |         |     |     | LaFaunce, Kinsey and<br>Chadwick (1964)    |
| IA   | (18 ponds)                   | 132  | 231  | 310     | 355    | 363    |        |        |         |     |     | Moorman (1957)                             |
| IL   | (average)                    | 160  | 229  | 295     | 343    | 401    | 442    | 480    | 503     | 516 | 526 | Lopinot (1967)                             |
| КХ   | (farm ponds)                 | 147  | 254  | 356     | 399    | 442    | 480    | 526    | 556     |     |     | Smith, Kirkwood and Hall<br>(1955)         |
| КY   | (lakes)                      | 150  | 292  | 368     | 396    | 483    |        |        |         |     |     | Tompkins and Carter (1951)                 |
| ΓA   | (Idlewild Lake)              | 218  | 267  | 287     | 351    | 388    | 498    |        |         |     |     | Muncy (1966)                               |
| MO   | (state-wide)                 | 109  | 218  | 292     | 335    | 353    |        |        |         |     |     | Purkett (1958)                             |
| NIN  | (average)                    | 66   | 157  | 292     | 350    | 389    | 414    | 429    |         |     |     | Mraz, Kimiotek and<br>Frankenberger (1961) |
| ΤM   | (farm ponds)                 | 53   | 160  | 260     | 270    |        |        |        |         |     |     | Brown and Thoreson (1952)                  |
| NC   | 1                            | 203  | 274  | 323     | 381    | 429    | 483    | 526    | 561     | 584 | 610 | Raver and Cornell (1951)                   |
| Ю    | (average)                    | 89   | 178  | 257     | 318    | 368    | 409    | 450    | 480     | 503 |     | Evans (1948)                               |
| OK   | (average)                    | 140  | 246  | 318     | 378    | 434    | 472    | 505    | 531     | 574 |     | Jenkins and Hall (1953)                    |
| OR   | (farm ponds)                 | 99   | 141  | 214     | 250    | 260    |        |        |         |     |     | Klavano (1958)                             |
| RI   | (average)                    | 76   | 162  | 236     | 300    | 366    | 396    | 424    | 460     |     |     | Saila and Horton (1957)                    |
| VA   | (Back Bay)                   | 130  | 274  | 358     | 404    | 452    | 503    | 541    | 554     |     |     | Roseberry (1951)                           |
| ΤM   | (average)                    | 84   | 188  | 267     | 318    | 356    | 384    | 414    |         |     |     | Mraz, Kimiotek and<br>Frankenberger (1961) |
| N. A | N. America (unweighted mean) | 119  | 216  | 288     | 345    | 392    | 432    | 467    | 495     | 510 | 528 | Carlander <sup>a/</sup>                    |
| Onta | Ontario, Canada (average)    | 170  | 221  | 287     | 320    | 348    | 391    | 426    | 450     | 457 | 490 | Scott and Crossman (1973)                  |
| S. A | S. Africa                    | 262  | 356  | 386     | 421    |        |        |        |         |     |     | Thompson (1939)                            |
| Fran | France near Paradet          | 40mm | 200g | 400g    | 750g   | 1125mm | uu     |        |         |     |     | Wurtz-Arlet (1952)                         |

K. Carlander in manuscript material from "Handbook of freshwater fisheries", Vol. 2

<u>в</u>

#### FIR/S115 Largemouth bass

In North America the largemouth bass is considered a sport fish. Thus in most waters it is legally caught only on hook and line, primarily on artificial baits or live minnows. Little published information exists on the landings of largemouth bass in those countries where commercial fishing takes place.

The largemouth bass first appears in the creel at approximately 18 cm (2-4 years). However, in many areas both length and numerical limits are applied (see 6.11).

4.13 Size composition (for maturity see 3.12; longevity 3.31; length and weight relationships for larva 3.22; for adolescent phase 3.23; size at first capture 4.12)

By comparing the age composition of various populations (Table XII) with the total length of bass at various ages (Table XIII), one finds that the majority of bass in a population are less than 35 cm in total length. Hayne, Hall and Nichols (1967) poisoned a 50 ha arm of a large reservoir and found 44 percent of bass to be between 2 and 10 cm, 42 percent between 12 and 23 cm and 14 percent larger than 23 cm. K. Carlander in manuscript from "Handbook of freshwater fisheries", Vol. 2, has compiled extensive data on the length-weight relationship of bass. Anderson (1975) summarized and plotted these data (Fig. 5).

The average length-weight relationships for bass in Alabama are given in Table XIV.

#### 4.2 Abundance and density (of populations)

## 4.21 Average abundance

Population densities of 120-240 adult fish/ha represent "strong" bass populations. As the density increases above 240/ha the possibility of a stunted population of 20-25 cm fish increases. "Weak" populations typically consist of relatively few large individuals (Heidinger, 1975).

# 4.22 Changes in abundance

For a short time after the spawning season larval bass occur at densities of several hundred or more per ha, but in the presence of an established fish population the number is drastically reduced within a month. However, because of their small size little change in biomass occurs.

| Total<br>length<br>(cm) | Number<br>of fish | Range in weight<br>(g) | Average<br>empirical<br>weight<br>(g) |       | ulated<br>ghts <u>a/</u><br>Polynomial<br>(g) | Coefficient<br>of condition<br>(K) |
|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|---|------------------------------------|
| 5.1                     | 190               | 1-7                    | 2                                     | 2     | 3   | 1.55                               |
| 7.6                     | 1 083             | 2-14                   | 6                                     | 6     | 6   | 1.39                               |
| 10.2                    | 1 554             | 3-29                   | 12                                    | 14    | 14  | 1.19                               |
| 12.7                    | 1 283             | 14-6                   | 25                                    | 26    | 27  | 1.23                               |
| 15.2                    | 839               | 16-91                  | 45                                    | 45    | 45  | 1.28                               |
| 17.8                    | 391               | 23-141                 | 77                                    | 73    | 77  | 1:39                               |
| 20.3                    | 234               | 86–181                 | 109                                   | 104   | 113   | 1.32                               |
| 22.9                    | 202               | 91-227                 | 150                                   | 150   | 159   | 1.26                               |
| 25.4                    | 208               | 136-340                | 209                                   | 204   | 213   | 1.29                               |
| 27.9                    | 119               | 227-635                | 308                                   | 290   | 327   | 1.63                               |
| 30.5                    | 121               | 113-572                | <b>3</b> 95                           | 386   | 372   | 1.50                               |
| 33.0                    | 70                | 363-626                | 490                                   | 494   | 467   | 1.37                               |
| 35.6                    | 66                | 408-907                | 612                                   | 626   | 608   | 1.37                               |
| 38.1                    | 33                | 5441 021               | 758                                   | 776   | 789   | 1,38                               |
| 40.6                    | 27                | 794-1 134              | 934                                   | 953   | 993   | 1.39                               |
| 43.2                    | 25                | 907-1 402              | 1 193                                 | 1 157 | 1 225   | 1.49                               |
| 45.7                    | 13                | 907-1 724              | 1 452                                 | 1 384 | 1 470   | 1.51                               |
| 48.3                    | 7                 | 1 361-2 041            | 1 678                                 | 1 642 | 1 724   | 1.50                               |
| 50.8                    | 4                 | 1 729-2 676            | 2 159                                 | 1 932 | 1 978   | 1.65                               |
| 53.3                    | 3                 | 2 268–2 914            | 2 522                                 | 2 259 | 2 223   | 1.66                               |

# TABLE XIV

#### Length-weight relationships of largemouth bass from Alabama (after Swingle, 1965)

a/ The standard calculated weights are from equations of the form  $W = aL^b$  and polynomial calculated. weights are from equations of the form  $W = b_0 + b_1 L + b_2 L^2 + b_3 L^3$ 

| Locality                            | Sampling method                                    | numbe $r/ha$     | kg/ha           | Reference        |
|-------------------------------------|--|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 166 ponds from Florida to<br>Canada | various  | 395(208-830)ª/   | 62.9(0.3-173.7) | Carlander (1955) |
| Ridge Lake, IL                      | average of 9<br>drainings over<br>a 21 year period |                  | 44.8(30.3–56.0) | Bennett (1971)   |
| Avg. 170 reservoirs U.S.A.          | various  |                  | 10.0(0.1-59.4)  | Jenkins (1975)   |
| Cuban lakes                         | cove sampling                                      | 1 505(267-2 744) | 92.0(56-129)    | Holvik (1970)    |
| 30 Oklahoma ponds                   | various  |                  | 49.0(2-359)     | Jenkins (1957)   |
| 12 Ohio ponds                       | various  | 472(250-1 668)   | 69.0(35-119)    | Morgan (1958)    |
| 9 balanced KY ponds                 | various  |                  | 49.0            | Turner (1960)    |
| 9 unbalanced KY ponds               | various  |                  | 41.0            | (as above)       |
| 14 midwestern U.S.A. ponds          | various  | 602(3-3 203)     | 39.0(3-107)     | Hackney (1975)   |

TABLE XV Standing crop of largemouth bass in selected bodies of water

a/ Range

#### 4.23 Average density

Some average densities are shown in Table XV. Additional data are given by K. Carlander in manuscript material for "Handbook of freshwater fisheries", Vol. 2. It will be noted that standing crops are relatively low. This is not surprising in view of the fact that the adult largemouth bass occupies a high trophic level.

Jenkins (1975) examined the correlations between the standing crop of largemouth bass and the standing crops of other fishes in U.S.A. reservoirs. He found a negative correlation (P = 0.20) for longnose gar (<u>Lepisosteus osseus</u>) and smallmouth bass a positive correlation (P>0.05) for black crappie, spotted gar (<u>L.</u> productus), spotted bass (<u>Micropterus punctulatus</u>), white crappie (<u>Pomoxis annularis</u>), white bass, gizzard shad, topminnows (<u>Fundulus spp.</u>), bluegill, warmouth, longear sunfish (<u>Lepomis</u> megalotis), channel catfish (<u>Ictalurus punctatus</u>), bulheads (<u>Ictalurus spp.</u>), carp (<u>Cyprinus carpio</u>), blue catfish (<u>I. furcatus</u>), bigmouth buffalo (<u>Ictiobus cyprinella</u>). Green sunfish were positively correlated at the P>0.20.

In comparison to standing crop, the literature contains very few values of production or surplus production. High standing crops do not necessarily correlate with high production or surplus production in either fished or unfished populations (Cooper, Hidu and Anderson, 1963; Cooper, Wagner and Krantz, 1971; Houser and Rainwater, 1975; Zweiacker and Brown, 1971; Schneider, 1971).

In a new 1.1 ha pond in Pennsylvania, Cooper, Hidu and Anderson (1963) calculated an annual surplus production of 57 kg/ha in 1959 and 85 kg/ha in 1961. In a 4.0 ha Pennsylvania lake annual surplus production over a 6 year period averaged 6.3 kg/ha (-16.0 to 29.4) (Cooper, Wagner and Krantz, 1971). Annual production of age I and older bass in Gunnel Fork Cove of Bull Shoals Lake, Arkansas from 1969 to 1973 ranged from 1.8 to 14.4 kg/ha. In Slate Gap Cove of Beaver Lake, Arkansas from 1968 to 1973 annual production of age I and older bass ranged from 2.9 to 35.5 kg/ha (Houser and Rainwater, 1975).

> 4.24 Changes in density (see 4.22; for catch per unit effort see 5.41)

When a new lake in the United States is opened up to fishing it is not uncommon for fishermen to remove 70 percent of the bass within 6 months (Graham, 1974). In Missouri's public fishing lakes (8-83 ha) with 22-94 trips/ha an average of 40 percent (27-69 percent) of the bass were harvested within the first 4 days.

A widely recognized phenomenon in reservoir bass populations is a very strong population for the first 3-10 years and then a drastic reduction in growth rate (Figs. 3 and 4), standing crop and yield. Various causes have been postulated including increased parasitism, lack of reproduction, overfishing, predation and depletion of nutrients. Lewis (1967) believes that the change in abundance of vulnerable food organisms leads to the decrease in bass populations. The cause(s) of this change has not been completely delineated.

#### 4.3 Natality and recruitment

#### 4.31 Reproduction rates

Bass tend to have a spawning season limited to less than 2 months a year (see 3.16). In culture ponds Bishop (1968) showed that 1.3 kg females produced an averaged 40 500 fry/female. Relative fecundity appears to be directly related to condition and size of fish. Changes in viability of eggs with increasing age of females has not been documented (see.7.2).

#### 4.32 Factors affecting reproduction

Swingle (1956) reported a spawning repressive factor that he believed prevented eggs from being laid. A sudden drop in water temperature does not in itself kill bass eggs. It does cause the male to desert the nest and in most cases the eggs are eaten or will be destroyed by <u>Saprolegnia</u>. Evidently the fanning action of the male is necessary for egg survival (Kelley, 1968; Miller, 1970; Jurgens and Brown, 1954). Removal of the male bass from the nest by angling or other means usually results in mortality of the eggs or newly hatched fry. Ordinarily an uninjured released male bass will return to his nest (Kramer and Smith, 1962).

The hatch of bass eggs in a suitable habitat may exceed 80 percent (Miller and Kramer, 1971; Snow, 1971). The success of the male bass in guarding the nest depends upon the physical placement of the nest, his ferocity and the number of predators, especially other centrarchids in North America (also see 4.33).

4.33 Recruitment

As is the case with many other species of fishes, year class strength of largemouth bass is determined within the first month (Kramer and Smith, 1962). Miller and Kramer (1971) found that the mean number of bass per seine haul after brood dispersal could be used as an index to year class strength. All factors that affect reproduction (see 4.32) affect recruitment.

The introduction of largemouth bass has failed in a number of countries (see 2.1). In South Africa <u>Clarias gariepinus</u> and <u>Barbus anoplus</u> appear to be detrimental (Robbins and McCrimmon, 1974). In Costa Rica the introduction of largemouth bass has failed in rivers containing <u>Cichlasoma dovii</u> (Robbins and McCrimmon, 1974). Bass have been stocked in large reservoirs in Rhodesia. Downstream movement of these fish appears to be limited by the large number of tiger fish <u>Hydrocynus vittatus</u> that are found below the dams (Jubb, 1967).

No correlation has been found between size of spawning stock and recruitment (Summerfelt, 1975; von Geldern, 1971; Kramer and Smith, 1962; Mraz and Cooper, 1957; Mraz, Kimiotek and Frankenberger, 1961; Saila and Horton, 1957; Schneider, 1971). However, because of intraspecific predation there is little recruitment of adolescent fish in small lakes which are overcrowded with 15-25 cm bass.

High recruitment has been correlated with high water levels especially when there is a flooding of new vegetation for several months after spawning occurs (Aggus and Elliot, 1975 r = 0.91; Bross, 1967; Jackson, 1957; Keith, 1975; von Geldern, 1971; Wegener and Williams, 1974). Negative correlations have been found when the high water levels occurred because of cold run off water produced by snow melting in mountain areas. High, especially cold, water may cause a delay in bass spawning, thus allowing the threadfin shad to spawn before the bass, resulting in direct competition for zooplankton between shad and young bass (von Geldern and Mitchell, 1975).

## 4.4 Mortality and morbidity

4.41 Mortality rates

Swingle (1951) and Brown (1951) stocked a total of 89 new or renovated ponds with bass fry and usually fry of other species. Survival averaged 70 percent (19-100 percent) to age I. Ball and Tait (1952) reported 60 percent survival to age II of stocked fingerlings and Johnson and McCrimmon (1967) reported 42 percent.

Regier (1963) determined the mean survival rates for approximately 1 cm bass stocked in bassgolden shiner ponds to be 83 percent/year for the first 2.3 years and 94 percent/year for the next 2.7 years. Corresponding estimates for bass in bass-bluegill ponds were about 80 percent/year for the first 5 years.

As can be seen from Table XVI the annual mortality rates of bass populations are quite variable. Except where noted mortality rates are for age I and older. Under increasing fishing pressure fishing mortality tends to increase and natural mortality decrease (Table XVII).

Zweiacker and Brown (1971) found higher mortalities of age I, VI and VII bass than age II, III and IV bass. Houser and Rainwater (1975) calculated higher mortalities of age II and III bass than older fish. Bennett (1971) calculated natural mortality of 1-3, 3-5, 5-6, 7-8 and 8+ year old bass to be 33, 13, 15, 39 and 73 percent respectively.

4.42 Factors causing or affecting
mortality
(see 4.31 for mortality of eggs and
3.2 for mortality of pre-adults)

Mortality of largemouth bass has been attributed to pollutants (see Table VII), diseases (see 3.35), oxygen depletion due to ice cover (Johnson, 1965), and predators including man. A unique source of mortality is electrical power generating plants. Subadult bass are intrained and impinged by the water required for cooling these units. At present the degree of harm incurred by the bass population due to these units has not been clearly defined.

Holbrook (1975) summarizes the results of initial and delayed mortalities of bass caught in 25 tournaments (see 5.41). Initial mortality in all 25 of these tournaments averaged 21 percent (2-61 percent). Delayed mortality was determined after 8 tournaments and averaged 12 percent (2-36 percent). High mortalities were associated

# TABLE XVI

| Locality                    | Year        | Mor     | tality (9 | 6)    | D. C                                    |
|-----------------------------|-------------|---------|-----------|-------|---|
| LIGGALL UY                  | Iear.       | Fishing | Natural   | Total | Reference                               |
| Clear Lake, CA              | alanak<br>A | 20      | 36        | 56    | Kimsey (1957)                           |
| Sutherland Reservoir, CA    | 1956        | 20      | 48        | 68    | LaFaunce, Kinsey and<br>Chadwick (1964) |
| (as above)                  | 1957        | 40      | 38        | 78    | (as above)                              |
| (as above)                  | 1958        | 47      | 26        | 73    | (as above)                              |
| (as above)                  | 1959        | 35      | 20        | 55    | (as above)                              |
| (as above)                  | 1960        | 48      | 35        | 83    | (as above)                              |
| Sugarloaf Lake, MI          | -           | 26      | 44        | 70    | Cooper and Latta (1954)                 |
| Gladstone Lake, MN          | 1957-1958   | 14      | 47        | 61    | Maloney, Schupp and<br>Scidmore (1962)  |
| Whitmore Lake, MI           | 6.0         | 22      | 20        | 42    | Cooper and Schafer (1954)               |
| Brown's Lake, WI            | 613h        | 24      | 12        | 12    | Mraz and Threinen (1957)                |
| Ridge Lake, IL              | 1941–1963   | 35-40   | 25-30     | 5-11  | Bennett (1971)                          |
| New York ponds (no fishing) | 807         | -       | 20        | 20    | Regier (1963)                           |
| Cuba                        |             |         |           | 76-89 | Holvik (1970)                           |
| Folsom Lake, CA             | <b>200</b>  | 40      | 49        | 89    | Rawstron (1967)                         |

#### Annual mortality of largemouth bass in various bodies of water

### TABLE XVII

Harvest, mortality and catch statistics for largemouth bass in Merle Collins Reservoir (407 ha) (after Rawstron and Hashagen, 1972)

| Year   | No.<br>anglers  | Angler<br>hours  | Annual<br>catch<br>(no.)                           | No. bass<br>per hour                         | Mean<br>weight<br>(g)                 | Mor<br>Fishing             | tality (%<br>Natural       | 5)<br>Total                |
|--|---|--|--|--|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1965<br>1966<br>1967<br>1968<br>1969<br>1970 | 3 410<br>5 118<br>8 194<br>10 118<br>11 756<br>11 170 | 13 007<br>17 376<br>27 801<br>39 930<br>48 222<br>52 860 | 3 447<br>5 407<br>7 682<br>3 582<br>2 300<br>1 937 | 0.27<br>0.31<br>0.28<br>0.10<br>0.05<br>0.04 | 127<br>91<br>172<br>245<br>380<br>458 | 36<br>45<br>62<br>65<br>65 | 56<br>26<br>24<br>11<br>21 | 92<br>71<br>86<br>76<br>86 |

with high water temperature. Plumb, Gaines and Jennings (1974) concluded that injections of oxytetracycline did not reduce delayed mortality. May (1973) found that 67 percent of the bass that had swallowed the hook died versus 7 percent that were hooked in the mouth.

- 4.43 Factors affecting morbidity
   (for wild populations see 3.35;
   for cultured see 7.6)
- 4.44 Relation of morbidity to mortality rates

Due to the young state of fishery science, parasitic infection has not been correlated with mortality unless an obvious epizootic has occurred. We do not know, for example, if a heavy bass tapeworm infection increases the mortality rate of the largemouth bass.

# 4.5 Dynamics of population (as a whole)

Very few mathematical models dealing with largemouth bass populations have been published and even fewer have been tested. Mathematically either the dynamic pool model approach of Beverton and Holt (1957) or the logistic model (Schaefer, 1954) could be used to describe bass populations. Of the two, the logistic is much simpler in that it only requires catch and effort data. However, Jensen (1974) has shown that numbers and biomass do not act concordantly in Kostitzin (1939), Lotka (1956) or Volterra (1928) competition equations unless average individual biomass is constant. In bass populations it is not constant, thus the logistic approach can be criticized on this point.

Lackey, Powers and Zuboy (1975) have tested a simulation model (STOCKS) on a multispecies lake

fishery. This is a stochatic model which emphasizes dynamic interrelationships among bluegill, black crappie and largemouth bass. In this model, analogous processes are not defined; rather, distributions are generated about some expected value for the vital statistics. The output is in terms of yield (catch). With the current sophistication the model at best predicts trends (Fig. 6).

Gasaway (1971) has proposed a model to estimate the costs of sustained stocking of largemouth bass fingerlings or yearlings in reservoirs. The necessary parameters are cost of fingerlings or yearlings, growth rate, annual mortality until the year class comes into the fishery, and exploitation rate after entry into the fishery. The effects of stocking on the existing bass population is not considered.

In order to appreciate some of the more important factors that affect standing crop (stock) Hackney (1974) has stated a simplistic model based on biomass of food available, annual mortality, assimilation of food and average metabolism. His model is as follows: B (biomass of bass possible) = biomass of food x percent assimilated + requirements for metabolism as a percentage of the ichthyomass/day throughout the year + percent annual mortality.

Anderson (1975) considers annual mortality to be extremely important in terms of optimum yield. By using average age-weight data, assuming no natural mortality, no change in growth rate or recruitment, a standing crop of 56 kg/ha and 50 or 80 percent total mortality, he generates the data Latta (1975) used Paulik and Bayliff's (1967) computer programme, which is based on Ricker's model of equilibrium yield per unit of recruitment, to predict the greatest potential yield (Table XIX) with various size limits and exploitation rates. The yield was positively correlated with exploitation rate and maximum at 70 percent exploitation with a 30 cm minimum size limit. Latta (1975) obtained good agreement with this model on 3 out of 4 lakes in Michigan. Apparently the change in growth or mortality due to increase in numbers of bass in these three cases was minimal.

Swingle (1950) from empirical observations in ponds described biomass ratios of predators (bass) to prey in balanced and unbalanced populations (Table XX). According to Swingle's definition of balance,

"the interrelationships in fish populations are satisfactory if the populations yield, year after year, crops of harvestable fish that are satisfactory in amount when the basic fertilities of the bodies of water containing these populations are considered".

Based on the results of his 1950 study, Swingle (1956) devised a method of analysis which

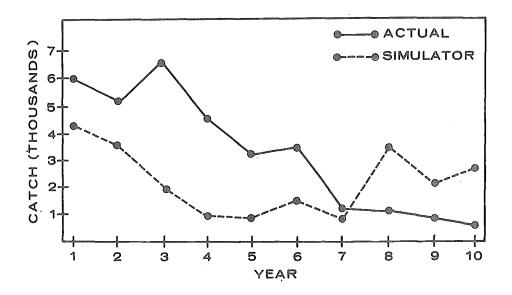


Fig. 6 Predicted yield of multispecies simulation model STOCKS as opposed to actual yield (after Lackey, Powers and Zuboy, 1975).

# TABLE XVIII

| A              | /0:-1                 |      |                | 50 percent        | mortali | ty_            |                   | 80 pe | rcent mc       | rtality_          |
|----------------|-----------------------|------|----------------|-------------------|---------|----------------|-------------------|-------|----------------|-------------------|
|                | uge/fish<br>Qualitya/ |      | Harvest/       | ha                | Catch   | and rel        | .ease/ha          |       | Harvest/       | ha                |
| Weight<br>(kg) | points                | No.  | Weight<br>(kg) | Quality<br>points | No.     | Weight<br>(kg) | Quality<br>points | No.   | Weight<br>(kg) | Quality<br>points |
| 0.34           | 1.0                   | 29.6 | 10.08          | 29.65             | 17.8    | 6.00           | 8.90              | 47.4  | 16.08          | 47.06             |
| 0.59           | 2.8                   | 14.8 | 8.72           | 41.51             | 8.9     | 5.21           | 10.29             | 9.4   | 5.55           | 25.98             |
| 0.87           | 4.1                   | 7.4  | 6.46           | 30.39             | 4.4     | 3.85           | 9.07              | 2.5   | 2.15           | 10.05             |
| 1.19           | 6.0                   | 3.7  | 4.42           | 22,24             | 2.2     | 2.60           | 6.62              |       | -              | _                 |
| 1.53           | 8.2                   | 2.0  | 3.06           | 16.31             | 1.0     | 1.47           | 3.92              |       | -              | _                 |
| 1.69           | 9•5                   | 1.7  | 2.94           | 16.31             |         | -              |                   |       | _              | <u> </u>          |
|                | TOTAL                 | 59.2 | 35.68          | 156.41            | 34•3    | 19.13          | 38.80             | 59•3  | 23.78          | 83.09             |

# Harvest and quality of bass fishing at 50 and 80 percent total annual mortality (after Anderson, 1975)

Quality points are based on a mathematical relationship in which a 4.5 kg bass has twice the a/ value of ten 0.45 kg bass

#### TABLE XIX

Yield in kg (per 453 kg of young bass recruited) of largemouth bass at four rates of exploitation and various minimum size limits (after Latta, 1975)

| Minimum size | $\begin{array}{c} \text{Approximate} \\ \text{O.20} \\ (\frac{1}{2}\text{F}) \underline{a} \end{array} /$ | annual | rate of exp: | loitation |
|--------------|---|--------|--------------|-----------|
| limit        |   | 0.35   | 0.55         | 0.70      |
| (cm)         |   | (1F)   | (2F)         | (3F)      |
| 20           | 1 112   | 1 276  | 1 282        | 1 317     |
| 25           | 1 119   | 1 425  | 1 632        | 1 812     |
| 30           | 994   | 1 359  | 1 670        | 1 912     |
| 35           | 565   | 879    | 1 266        | 1 117     |
| 40           | 332   | 540    | 825          | 1 065     |
| 45           | 75  | 130    | 213          | 282       |

a/ Instantaneous fishing mortality F = 0.581

# TABLE XX

Biomass ratio of bluegill and largemouth bass (after Swingle, 1950)

| Ratio <sup>a</sup> /                      | Range   | Range of balance  | Most desirable range                       |
|---|---|---|--|
| At<br>Y/C<br>F/C<br>Eb/<br>AF<br>IF<br>SF | 0-90.0<br>0.02±16.0<br>0.06-65.0<br>3.10-41.6<br>1.20-99.6<br>0.00-100.0<br>0.40-95.5 | 33.00-90.0<br>0.02- 5.0<br>1.40-10.0<br>9.10-41.6<br>18.20-99.6<br>0.00-41.4<br>0.40-80.0 | 60-85<br>1-3<br>3.6<br>14-25<br>60-80<br>- |

<u>a</u>/

At = biomass of catchable fish/total blomass Y/C = biomass of forage fish small enough to be eaten by average size predator/biomass of predators

E = biomass of bass/total biomass

AF = biomass of large size forage/total biomass of forage

- $I_{\rm F}$  = biomass of intermediate size forage/total biomass of forage  $S_{\rm F}$  = biomass of small size forage/total biomass of forage

b/ For two species only

does not require a representative biomass sample of the total fish populations. His method can be used in ponds during the second summer after they have been stocked with bluegills and largemouth bass or in older ponds that contain these species. The procedure involves making several shoreline hauls with a 16 m minnow seine. Swingle's interpretation is as follows:

- I. No young bass present:
  - A. Many newly-hatched bluegills, no (or very few) intermediate bluegills. (Bass overcrowded, temporary unbalance.)
  - B. No recent hatch of bluegills, many intermediates. (Unbalanced, bluegills overcrowded, insufficient bass.)
  - C. Same as above, plus many tadpoles and/ or minnows. (Unbalance, no bass or extremely few bass.)
  - D. No recent hatch of bluegills, few intermediates. (Unbalanced, due to crowding by other species, e.g., catfish, shad.)
  - E. No recent hatch of bluegills, no intermediates. (Water too cold for spawning (less than 18°C); too saline; or too heavily laden with silt.)
- II. Young bass present:
  - A. Many newly-hatched bluegills and some intermediates present. (Pond in balance and producing fish in proportion to its fertility.)
  - B. Many newly-hatched bluegills and no intermediates. (Temporary balance, but bass overcrowded.)
  - C. No recent hatch of bluegills.
    - Few intermediate bluegills. (Pond overcrowded after bassspawning period. Usually due to pond's being fertilized last year, unfertilized in current year. Sometimes due to overcrowding by other species which reached a competitive size in late spring or summer, e.g., gizzard shad.)
    - No intermediate bluegills. (Bluegills absent from pond or unable to reproduce. Water too cold for spawning (less than 26°C) or too saline (salinity 0.5 /oo or higher).)

4. Many intermediate bluegills. (Unbalance, same as I-B but less badly overcrowded by bluegills.)

# 4.6 The population in the community and the ecosystem

Much of this subject is dealt with in other sections of this synopsis. When 8-15 cm Atlantic salmon (<u>Salmo salar</u>) were stocked in the presence of bass, a sample of the bass demonstrated that 25 percent of them had salmon in their stomachs (Warner, 1972). Similarly, when rainbow trout (<u>Salmo gairdneri</u>) were stocked to maintain a "two-storey" fish population, 49, 82 and 91 percent of the 40, 42 and 45 cm bass contained trout. They averaged 5 trout per bass. It was concluded that a trout of at least 25 cm in length is required to avoid heavy loss due to predation (Keith and Barkley, 1971). Predation by bass on stocked rainbow trout has also been reported in Ontario by Stocek and McCrimmon (1965) and in Oregon by Bond (1948).

#### 5 EXPLOITATION

# 5.1 Fishing equipment

5.11 Gear

In North America bass are taken for sport, primarily by angling. Early anglers used a cane pole with a large live minnow as bait. One of the first artificial lures was a bug-like object made of deer hair. The Seminole Indians of Florida used lures like these as early as 1700. Other North American Indians used floating lures carved from cedar (Logendyke, 1953). Most of the small floating lures were later used as fly rod lures. This type of fishing is now referred to as "bug fishing". The development of a reel holding 50-75 m of line attached to a relatively short, steel or bamboo rod, together with the development of larger and heavier lures was the basis for the present bait casting method of fishing. Although originally developed for catching largemouth bass. this method is now used in fishing for almost every sport fish (Lincoln, 1953). Over the years, bait casting equipment (rod, reel, line and lure) has been continually improved. Today, bait casting reels are light-weight, freespooling and equipped with automatic drags, anti-backlash devices, and level-wind pickup. While the early lines were braided silk, and later nylon, they are now clear or fluorescent monofilament nylon, with a breaking strength of 3-14 kg. Rods have evolved from solid wood, split bamboo and steel, to glassfibre. and finally to high density graphite rods with ceramic or Teflon(R) line guides.

| Capture                          | Location                                       | Year       | Number/h                                    | Yield<br>kg/ha/year         | Reference   |
|----------------------------------|--|------------|---|-----------------------------|---|
| Flag gillnet<br>(see Table XXII) |  |            |   |                             |   |
| Yo-Yo                            | 32 lakes in LA                                 | I          | 0.001                                       | I                           | Davidson, Posey and Hoenke<br>(1968)                                      |
| Spearfishing                     | Lake Mead, NV                                  | 1969–1970  | 0.72  | I                           | Lockard (1971)  |
| (as above)                       | Nebish Lake, WI                                | 1967       | 0.28  | I                           | Kempinger (1968)  |
| Trawl (midwater)                 | Douglas Reservoir, TW                          | I          | 0.66 per haul<br>(10 min?)                  |                             | Hayne, Hall and Nichols<br>(1967)   |
| Hook and Line                    | 46 national bass<br>tournaments <sup>a</sup> / | 1967–1974  | average 0.33/<br>(0.05-1.00) <sup>D</sup> / |                             | Hollbrook (1975)  |
| (as above)                       | National average of 85<br>U.S.A. reservoirs    | I          | 0.17  | 6.1                         | Jenkins and Morais (1971)<br>and personal communi-<br>cation with Jenkins |
| (as above)                       | 3 fertilized ponds, IL                         | 1947–1952  | average 0.26<br>(0.06-1.21)                 | 13.6 (1.12–33.6)            | Hansen <u>et</u> <u>al.</u> (1960)  |
| (as above)                       | 3 unfertilized ponds, IL                       | 1947–1952  | average 0.29<br>(0.09-0.56)                 | 12.8 (3.4–37.0)             | (as above)  |
| (as above)                       | 11 lakes, AL                                   | i          | I   | 32.8 (10.1–67.2)            | Byrd and Moss (1957)  |
| (as above)                       | Gladstone, MN                                  | 1952–1958  | ł   | 3.2 (2.1-4.7) <sup>2/</sup> | Maloney, Schupp and<br>Scidmore (1962)                                    |
| (as above)                       | Mozoe Dam, Rhodesia                            | ł          | 1   | (1 100 kg total)            | Toots (1970)  |
| (as above)                       | Cleveland Dam, Rhodesia                        | I          | 1   | (65-140 kg total)           | (as above)  |
| Electrofishing                   | 6.2 ha lake, IL                                | 1% of popu | 1% of population per trip around the lake   | ound the lake               | Lewis and Flickinger<br>(1967)  |
|                                  |  |            |   |                             |   |

Primarily largemouth bass Range Fishing pressure of 91 h/ha/year 

FIR/S115 Largemouth bass

Effectiveness of fishing methods used for largemouth bass TABLE XXI

Concurrent with the development of baitcasting equipment, spinning equipment has been improved and become popular. In general, it permits the use of lightweight lures and is relatively trouble-free as regards the line becoming tangled on the reel. The evolvement of lures has in part been based on a better understanding of the behaviour of the largemouth bass.

One of the earliest commercially available artificial baits was a cigar-shaped design made by Jim Heddon in Michigan. This and similar designs were surface fishing lures. Subsequently lures were developed that can be used at various depths below the surface. In recent years one of the most successful lures has been the plastic worm. It is not easily snagged on underwater obstructions and can be fished at any depth. Furthermore, it is probable that the plastic worm, being soft, avoids the possibility of the lure being as readily rejected by the fish. Various accessory devices have also come into use. Thus in the last ten years the availability of relatively inexpensive sonar sounding devices which detect bottom contours, and even fish, have led to the highly productive method of fishing known as "structure" fishing. Devices for detection of temperature and oxygen values at various depths are also being used.

Probably more bass are caught with minnows, spinner baits and artificial plastic than with all other baits combined. Snow (1971) found that 75 percent of the bass were caught on artificial lures, despite the fact that 50 percent of the fishing was with natural bait.

Even though hook and line methods are most popular, many other methods have been used to capture bass. Spearfishing with SCUBA has been legalized in a few lakes in the U.S.A. (Kempinger, 1968; Lockard, Wood and Allan, 1971). Relatively few bass are caught on trot lines. Yo-Yo fishing also takes relatively few bass (Table XXI). Yo-Yos are automatic spring-loaded devices equipped with a line and a hook that when triggered by the pull of a fish automatically set the hook and play the fish. These are legal in many states in the U.S.A.

Entanglement gear such as trainmel nets and gillnets and maze gear such as hoop nets, or wing nets will also capture bass (see 5.41 and Table XXI), but in general their efficiencies are rather low (Starrett and Barnickol, 1955; Vasey, 1972; Buck and Cross, 1952; Grinstead and Gomez, 1972; Dennett and Brown, 1969) (Tableş XXII, XXIII, XXIV). Trawls are also inefficient in the capture of bass (Hayne, Hall and Nichols, 1967; Bonn, 1967). In fish management it is often desirable to harvest commercially species such as carp, buffalo (<u>Ictiobus</u> spp.), and other non-game fish without capturing bass.

In fishery research work electrical fishing equipment, seines and fish toxicants are commonly used to sample largemouth bass populations (see 5.44). Electrofishing equipment used in the U.S.A. usually consists of a gasoline powered, 60 or 180 Hz, single or three-phase, alternating current generator of 2 500-3 500 W output, while in Europe direct current units of similar wattage are more popular.

#### 5.12 Boats

Many bass were and still are caught from shore, but boat fishing is very popular and has undergone tremendous change in the last 15 years. Wooden row boats were initially used, while aluminium and fibreglass boats are now the most popular. In the mid-sixties the average boat was 3-4.5 m long, powered by an outboard motor of 18 hp or less.

# TABLE XXII

Efficiency of experimental flag gillnets in capturing largemouth bass. Each net consisted of seven 25m panels 2.6m deep (after Lambou, 1962)

| Bar size<br>(mm)                        | Total I<br>Mean<br>(mm)                   | Length bass<br>Range<br>(mm)                             | Total caught <sup>a/</sup><br>(number) | Number per<br>net-dayb                             |
|---|---|--|--|--|
| 25<br>38<br>51<br>64<br>76<br>88<br>114 | 295<br>325<br>381<br>455<br>472<br>0<br>0 | 190–470<br>241–508<br>343–559<br>406–533<br>432–521<br>– | 3<br>15<br>14<br>7<br>3<br>0<br>0      | 0.05<br>0.23<br>0.21<br>0.12<br>0.05<br>0.0<br>0.0 |

a/ Total of 70 net-days

 $\overline{b}$ / Net-day = 1 experimental net set for 24 hours

| IIIXX |  |
|-------|--|
| TABLE |  |

Selectivity of gill and trammel nets for largemouth bass

|   |            |                 |              |            |                             | Bar                                | Bar mesh (mm)  |             |                     |             |            |
|---|------------|-----------------|--------------|------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|--|-------------|---------------------|-------------|------------|
|   | 13         | 19              | 24           | 32         | 38                          | 44                                 | 51   | 63          | 76                  | 89          | 101 + 129  |
|   |            |                 |              |            | Johnsor                     | 1, Rinne                           | Johnson, Rinne and Wincbley, 1970  | 1970        |                     |             |            |
| Number/30.4 m/24 h<br>Roosevelt Lake, AR<br>Appace Lake, AR | 0.3<br>0.1 | 1.2<br>0.7      | 1.3<br>0.9   | 1.6<br>1.6 | 1 1                         | 2°-1<br>1°5                        | 0.8 (0.3) <u>a/</u><br>0.6 (0.6) <u>a/</u>                               | 00          | ° 0 0               | 11          | 0.0        |
| Number/30.4 m/24 h<br>Weight(g)/30.4 m/24 h                 |            |                 |              |            | Be<br>0.17<br>150           | snnett a                           | Bennett and Brown, 1969<br>- 0.06<br>- 86                                | 0.02<br>37  | 0 <b>.</b> 02<br>24 | 0.07<br>181 | 0.02<br>58 |
| Number/30.4 m/24 h<br>Length range (cm)                     |            |                 | 4•7<br>16–22 | 1.1        | Б<br>0.27<br>26 <b>-</b> 29 | suck and<br>-                      | Buck and Cross, 1952<br>- 0.36<br>- 33-35                                | 00          |                     |             |            |
| a/ Catch in parentheses for                                 |            | 1 30.4 m        | trammel 1    | net fish   | ed 24 hou                   | urs. Ou                            | a 30.4 m trammelnet fished 24 hours. Outer mesh 254 mm, inner mesh 51 mm | n, inner    | mesh 51             | шш          |            |
|   |            |                 |              |            | TABLE XXIV                  | XIX                                |  |             |                     |             |            |
|   |            | BÊÊ             | iciency c    | f trap :   | nets in c                   | apturin                            | Efficiency of trap nets in capturing largemouth bass                     | с<br>С<br>С |                     |             |            |
|   | let desc   | Net description |              |            |                             | Number bass<br>caught/<br>24 h set | bass Size range<br>t/ (cm)   | range<br>n) |                     | Reference   |            |

Buck and Cross (1952) (as above)

15-42 17-44

2°5 1.4

1.1 m diameter, 3 m length, 3 m wings, 18 m lead-nylon 1.1 m diameter, 3 m length, 3 m wings, 18 m lead-wire

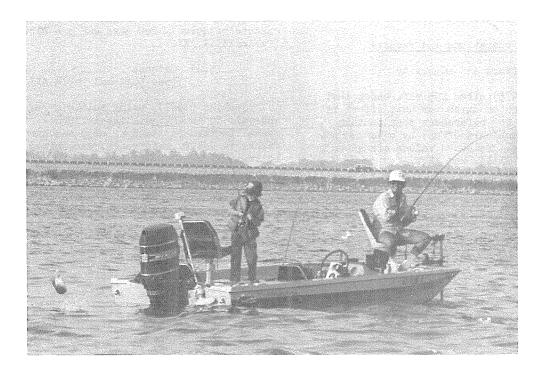


Fig. 7 Well equipped high-speed bass boat complete with echosounder, anchors, padded seats, electric trolling motor and aerated live well (photo courtesy of Steve Wunderly)

Today many bass boats are 5-6 m long, powered by 80-150 hp motors. They are capable of attaining speeds of 70 km/h. Two factors have contributed to the increase in size and weight of bass boats: the increased number of large reservoirs have made the larger, heavier bass boats more desirable, while the electric trolling motor has made their use in bass fishing practical. A well equipped bass boat (Fig. 7) has an echosounder, winchoperated anchors, padded pedistal seats, 12-24 V electric trolling motor (used for positioning the boat), an aerated live well, oxygen meter, light meter and thermister.

- 5.2 Fishing areas
  - 5.21 General geographic distribution (for geographic distribution see 2.1)

The largemouth bass is fished in all waters where it occurs.

- 5.22 Geographic ranges (see 2.1)
- 5.23 Depth ranges

Largemouth bass have been caught at depths of at least 25 m (Cady, 1945). In the many eutrophic lakes inhabited by bass the absence of oxygen in deep water limits their vertical distribution.

5.24 Conditions of the grounds

Two factors have increased the area which the largemouth bass now occupies. One has been the introduction of bass into other countries from North America, and the other has been the construction throughout the world of new reservoirs.

A number of events have decreased bass habitat. Stream and river channelization, which results in silting of backwater areas, has destroyed bass habitat. Municipal and industrial pollution has degraded water quality in many parts of the world. In the U.S.A. from 1960 to 1972 over 144 million fish were reported killed in 4 200 incidents (Mackenthum, 1972). The number of bass was not given.

- 5.3 Fishing seasons
  - 5.31 General pattern of season(s) (see 5.41)

Except where prohibited by law (6.12), bass are caught all year round. However, peak effort and catches characteristically occur in the spring (Lagler and DeRoth, 1952; Snow, 1971).

> 5.32 Dates of beginning, peak and end of season(s) (see 6.12)

- 5.33 Variations in date or duration of season (see 5.41, 6.11, 6.12)
- 5.4 Fishing operations and results
  - 5.41 Effort and intensity

Heidinger (1975) cites 295 references that contain information on catch per unit effort by hook and line and 169 references that contain information on catch/unit effort by other methods than hook and line. Selected values are given in Tables XXI, XXII, XXIII, and XXIV.

Catches of between 1 and 2 fish/h over at least a 12 month period have been documented only a few times (Hansen <u>et al.</u>, 1960; Trautman, 1941). It has been estimated that 126 legalsize bass/ha would be needed to provide an average oatch of 1 bass/h (Lagler and DeRoth, 1952).

In the past few years there has been an upsurge of interest in bass fishing stimulated by bass clubs and groups such as the Bass Anglers Sportsman Society (BASS). An outgrowth of these organizations has been the proliferation of bass fishing tournaments (Lorenzen and Heidinger, 1973). An even more recent outgrowth of this interest in the largemouth bass was the establishment in 1974 of the Bass Research Foundation (BRF).

The growing number and commercialization of bass fishing tournaments has generated some concern among anglers and fishery managers about the effect of these tournaments on bass populations. In most tournaments efforts are made to release the bass alive after weighing. At the present time it appears that the large national tournaments do not overfish bass populations (Holbrook, 1975). In most reservoirs, large national fishing tournaments have accounted for less than 4 percent of the total yearly harvest of bass by all fishermen. National tournament fishermen catch bass at a slightly faster rate than do nontournament anglers (Table XXI), but like ordinary fishermen the "pros" seldom catch a legal limit. Tournament caught bass are typically small (average 0.84 kg) females (61 percent) (Holbrook, 1975). Because of the large number of bass caught (approximately  $1 \ 000$ ) in a relatively short period (usually 3 days), bass tournaments offer the opportunity to investigate population size, movement, etc.

## 5.42 Selectivity

Colour, mesh size and construction affect the selectivity of entanglement and maze devices. Of 9 colours of gillnets used (red, orange, yellow, green, blue, violet, brown, black, clear monofilament), yellow caught the most large bass and red the fewest (Jester, 1973). Flag gillnets of larger than 76 mm bar mesh capture very few bass (Table XXII). Both gillnets and trap nets capture relatively few bass and are size selective (Tables XXIII, XXIV).

> 5.43 Catches (see 5.41 and Table XXI)

Jenkins (1967), using multiple regression analysis to investigate the influence of environmental factors on standing crop and harvest of fishes in U.S.A. reservoirs, determined the following:

- An increase in total dissolved solids correlates with an increase in standing crop and sport fish yield;
- 2. An increase in reservoir age correlates with an increase in clupeid crop and commercial harvest, a decrease in sport fish harvest and little change in standing crop;
- An increase in storage ratio correlates with a decrease in standing crop and commercial harvest and an increase in sport harvest;
- 4. An increase in reservoir area correlates with a decrease in sport harvest (due to decrease in effort/unit area);
- 5. An increase in mean depth correlates with a decrease in total standing crop, sport harvest, and commercial harvest;
- 6. An increase in shoreline development correlates with an increase in standing crop and sport fish harvest, but a decrease in commercial harvest.

For yield/ha/year by hook and line see Table XXI.

#### 5.44 Sampling and marking

Reported information on bass populations exhibits considerable variation. A portion of this variation is due to sampling error rather than biological variation. Validity of various methods used to estimate some parameters are summarized in Table XXV. One of the most comprehensive studies on the bias associated with rotenone-sampling of coves was reported by Hayne, Hall and Nichols (1967) (Table XXVI). Cove samples tended to overestimate Swingle's F/C ratio. Barry (1967) found rotenone sampling provided a better estimate of standing crop, but electrofishing gave a better estimate of the relative abundance of various species.

| <br>XXV |
|---------|
| TABLE   |

Validity of various types of population estimates

| $ \begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$  |                       |   |                                 |                        |  |                   |                                   |  |                        |                   |                                |                         |                  |                     |  |                                     |
|--|-----------------------|---|---------------------------------|------------------------|--|-------------------|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|---------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| 3.5 Electrofishing 304 469 (604 11)<br>2.5 Seine (40 x 5 m) (4 x 5 m) (54 28 180 57 57 59 10 17 17 59 17 17 59 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10  | Lake<br>area<br>(ha)  | Sampling metl                             | 1 1                             | Ma.<br>Schni<br>Number | rk and r <sup>(</sup><br>able<br>Weigh <sup>(kg)</sup> | ecover)           | / formula<br>umholz (15<br>Number | estimat<br>144) P                      | e<br>etersen<br>Number | Rc<br>Numbe       | 8                              | Nu                      |                  | n<br>ght<br>g)      | Reference  | nce                                 |
| 2.5 Seine $(40^{\circ} x 5^{\circ} m)$ $(4 - 26)^{30}$ $(4 - 18)$ $(10^{-26})^{30}$ $(10^{-26})^{30}$ $(10^{-2$ | 3.5                   | Electrofishing                            |                                 | 304                    |  |                   |                                   |  | 469                    |                   |                                | 604                     |                  | 02                  | Swingle e  | et al.                              |
| 96.0 Seine (550 x 5 m) $16$ $(10-26)^{9}$            | 2.5<br>16.0<br>0.3    | Seine (40'x 5 r<br>Seine<br>Seine         | n)                              | 64                     | 28   |                   | 180                               |  | 57                     |                   |                                | 221<br>17<br>59         | τ.               |                     | (1966)<br>Hundley (1954<br>Elkin (1955)<br>Carlander and | 6)<br>y (1954)<br>(1955)<br>der and |
| 36.0 Retenues cove sample $(12, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0,$  | 396.0                 | Seine (650 x 5                            |                                 | 16<br>10 06 13/        |  | _                 |                                   |  |                        |                   |                                | 29                      | Ж                |                     | Moorman<br>Threinen (                                    | (1956)<br>(1956)                    |
| <pre>     Range     Yalidity of cove rotenone samples as     and harvestable (&gt;22.9 cm) size bass     and harvestable (&gt;22.9 cm) size bass     Outer In</pre>  | 36.0<br>200.0<br>10.0 | Rotenone cove :<br>(as above)<br>Fyke net | ple                             |                        |  |                   | 51                                |  |                        | 171<br>62         | 30<br>12                       | 71<br>111<br>159        | 46               |                     | Barry (1967)<br>(as above)<br>Krumholz (1944)            | 67)<br>.e)<br>(1944)                |
| <pre>hity of cove rotenone samples as<br/>narvestable (&gt;22.9 cm) size bass<br/>0uter In<br/>5 coves 5 c<br/>(1.2-1.6 ha) (0.<br/>No/ha 168 2<br/>Kg/ha 13 2<br/>Kg/ha 13 2<br/>Bias<sup>a</sup>/ of numerical estim<br/>Young 0.8 ha<br/>* *** 1ine *<br/>1.25 1.86 1.29 1.30</pre>   |                       | ge  |                                 |                        |  |                   | f v<br>E                          | 11111111111111111111111111111111111111 |                        |                   |                                |                         |                  |                     |  |                                     |
| $\begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$  | Val<br>and            | idity of cove rol<br>harvestable (>22     | tenone sam]<br>2.9 cm) siz      | ples as<br>ze bass     |  | nate of<br>5 ha a | rAF<br>numbers<br>rm of Dou       | dub AAVI<br>and wei.<br>glas re:       | ght of y<br>servoir,   | oung (2<br>Tennes | . <b>.5-10.</b> 2<br>isee (aft | cm), inte<br>;er Hayne, | rmedia<br>Hall a | te (12.<br>and Nic  | .7-20.3 c<br>chols, 19                                   | m),<br>67)                          |
| $ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$  |                       |   | Outer<br>5 coves<br>(1.2-1.6 ht | 50                     | nner<br>coves<br>8 ha)                                 | 2 ha<br>cove      | Mino<br>9 cov<br>(0.2-0.8         |  | All<br>20 coves        |                   | eline                          | Open wate               |                  | and tot             | al   |                                     |
| $ \begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $  |                       | No/ha<br>Kg/ha                            | 168<br>13                       |                        | 296<br>14  | 217<br>13         | 274<br>17                         |  | 237<br>14              | -                 | 78<br>13                       | 116<br>16               |                  | 158<br>16           |  |                                     |
| Ioung         Intermediate         Harvestable         Potent           1.2 ha 2 ha shore- $0.8$ ha 1.2 ha 2 ha $2$ ha $1.2$ ha 2 ha $1.2$ ha $2$ ha $1.0 \text{ table}$ $1.2 \text{ ha}$ <  |                       | a.  | of numerice                     | al estin               | mates at   | variou            | s samplin                         | g sites                                | and its                |                   | of stati                       | stical si               | gnifice          | ance <sup>b</sup> / |  |                                     |
| * *** Line * Line * Line * *** * ***<br>1 1.25 1.86 1.29 1.30 0.94 1.08 1.06 0.55 0.75 0.69 0.71 1.87 1.05 1.37  | 0.8 h                 | 1.2 ha                                    |                                 | <b>).</b> 8 ha         | 1.2 ha   | 2 ha              |                                   | 0.8 ha                                 | 1.2 ha                 | <u>л</u>          | shore-                         |                         | 1.2 ha           | 2 ha                | 1  | shore                               |
| 1.25 1.86 1.29 1.30 0.94 1.08 1.06 0.55 0.75 0.69 0.71 1.87 1.05 1.37  | ***                   |   | LING                            | *                      |  |                   | Line                              | *                                      |                        | *                 | line                           | ***                     |                  | ***                 | cove<br>***  | Ine                                 |
|  | 2 <b>.</b> 81         | 1 <b>.</b> 25                             | 1 <b>.</b> 29                   | 1.30                   | 0.94   | 1.08              | 1 <b>.</b> 06                     | 0.55                                   | 0.75                   | 0.69              | 0.71                           | 1.87                    | 1.05             | 1.37                | 1 <b>.</b> 61  | 1.12                                |

Bias = Number or weight of bass found in a given sampling site divided by total number or weight in all samples
\* = 0.05epg0.20 \*\* = 0.01epg0.05 \*\*\* = pg0.01

FIR/S115 Largemouth bass

0.85

0.86 1.01

0.82

0.89

0.75

0.68

0.76

\* 0.53

0.94

. 1**.**01

0.87

**1.**22

1.35

\*\*\* 1**.**82

**1.**25

\*\*\* 2.72

লাল

\*

Total

of weight estimates at various sampling sites and its level of statistical significance  $^{b\!\!\!/}$ 

Harvestable

Intermediate

Biasa

Young

Buck and Thoits (1965) used a seine that covered 90 percent of the water to obtain a series of Petersen mark and recovery estimates on three 0.4 ha ponds. The ponds were then drained. For all groups of bass, the average percentage of error was 28.1. When restricted to fish older than age 0, the average percentage of error was 19.8. The principal source of error was the recapture of too many marked fish. Underestimations exceeded overestimations by rates of 46 to 16.

Ordinarily not all bass are recovered by draining or poisoning. Swingle <u>et al.</u> (1965) recovered 71 percent of the marked fish in a small pond. Henley (1967) used SCUEA to determine the sampling error for 11 cove rotenone samplings (0.4-0.6 ha). After 3 days an average of 84 percent of the bass floated to the surface and were recovered.

Under most conditions mark and recovery estimates tend to underestimate both weight and number of bass. In the presence of extremely low population densities the method appears to overestimate the population (Lewis, Summerfelt and Bender, 1962). Total estimates are always lower than the sum of size-class estimates. Cove samples tend to overestimate the numbers of subadult bass (Table XXVI). Because of their selectivity, creel data, entanglement devices and maze devices do not give reliable information on population structure (TablesXXVII, XXVIII). The validity of creel census data depends upon reporting of marked fish by fishermen. Exploitation rates based on such data may vary considerably for a given population due to the non-reporting of tags. In two studies in California waters failure to report was approximately 40 percent (Rawstron, 1971, 1972); in a similar study in Massachusetts, failure to report was 25 percent (Stroud and Bitzer, 1955).

Numerous marks and tags have been used on largemouth bass. Fin clipping was one of the first methods used for marking largemouth bass; as is the case of all marking or tagging, the question arises as to the effect of the procedure on the fish. Ricker (1949) concluded that youngof-the-year bass 4.8 cm long with one fin removed suffered twice the natural mortality of unmarked fish, but bass larger than 13 cm in total length were not subject to differential mortality. Meehean (1940) found that after 5 weeks, pelvic, dorsal or pectoral fin clips on fingerling bass were not discernable. However, Eipper and Forney (1965) reported that when the distal half of the pectoral fin of 15-18 cm bass was removed, even though the fin regenerated, a permanent thickening or bending of the rays was evident. This was not

# TABLE XXVII

Comparison of population structure based on fyke net and poisoning on a 4 ha lake (after Krumholz, 1944)

| Total length<br>of bass<br>(mm)                               | <u>Fyke ne</u><br>Number | and the second se | Poiso<br>Number            | <u>n</u><br>%             |
|---|--------------------------|---|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 51-100<br>101-150<br>151-200<br>201-250<br>251-300<br>301-350 | 3<br>5<br>13<br>4        | 12<br>20<br>52<br>16  | 21<br>26<br>38<br>82<br>11 | 12<br>14<br>21<br>45<br>6 |

#### TABLE XXVIII

Comparison of largemouth bass population structure by weight and number using various sampling methods

| Lake area      | Gill        | net         | Cove ro                                 | otenone                  | Hook ar            | nd line              | Drai              | ning                | Reference                                   |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|---|--------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|---|
| (ha)           | Number<br>% | Weight<br>% | Number<br>%                             | Weight<br>%              | Number<br>%        | Weight<br>%          | Number<br>%       | Weight<br>%         |   |
| 36<br>15<br>81 | 27          | 45          | 1.7(3) <sup>a</sup><br>3.0(1)<br>1.4(1) | / 18(3)<br>22(1)<br>4(1) | 5.5<br>32.3<br>3.7 | 17.4<br>45.5<br>22.9 | 1.6<br>1.2<br>0.5 | 12.4<br>16.0<br>3.3 | Sandow (1971)<br>Barry (1967)<br>(as above) |

a/ Number of coves sampled in parentheses

TABLE XXIX

Retention time of various tags used for marking largemouth bass

| Tag type  | Tag location   | Duration<br>of study<br>(months) | Retention (%)  | Reference  |
|---|--|----------------------------------|----------------|--|
| Spaghetti <sup>a/</sup><br>Frazer <sup>a/</sup><br>Atkins | Below and behind dorsal<br>(as above)<br>Below posterior base of soft dorsal | 24<br>24<br>7                    | 17<br>17<br>10 | White and Beamish (1972)<br>(as above)<br>Latapie (1968) |
| Petersen disc   | Midway between spiny dorsal and<br>lateral line below middle                 | 7                                | 0              | (as above)   |
| Spaghetti   | Same as Atkins   | 7                                | Ŀ              | (as above)   |
| Strap   | Opercle upper edge   | 7                                | 0              | (as above)   |
| -Dart   | Midway between spiny dorsal and<br>lateral line below middle                 | 7                                | ŝ              | (as above)   |
| Strap <sub>b/</sub>                                       | Premaxillary or maxillary  | <b>,</b>                         | 30             | (as above)   |
| Disc dangler <sup></sup>                                  | 2 wires below posterior base of soft dorsal                                  | 24                               | 100            | Kimsey (1956)  |
| Petersen disc   | 2.5 cm below dorsal <sup>2/</sup>  | 1.3                              | 53             | Kirkland (1963)  |
| Petersen disc   | 3 scales anterior to origin of caudal ray2/                                  | 1°.3                             | 85             | (as above)   |
| a/ Used monofilament: 2                                   | Used monofilament: 2 people can apply 30 tags/h                              |                                  |                |  |

Decuments - people can apply you wash multiply the process in width. Thus for a 23 cm bass in California For every 5 cm increase in fork length there is a 25 mm increase in width. Thus for a 23 cm bass in California waters 2 year's growth are required before pressure is placed on the bones. Tantalum wire was best since it aided in immobilizing the tag Tag was attached with a stainless steel pin लेल

 $\overline{)}$ 

## TABLE XXX

Percentage retention time of various Floy<sup>(R)</sup> dart tags on adult bass (after Wilbur and Duchrow, 1973 except where noted)

| Tag type  | Time                       |                                  | Colour |       |
|---|----------------------------|----------------------------------|--------|-------|
|   | (months)                   | orange                           | green  | brown |
| FD-67<br>FD-67<br>FD-67 (standard)<br>FD-67 C<br>FD-68 D<br>FD-68 B | 3<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>1 | 58<br>78<br>47<br>75<br>88<br>51 | 62     | 63    |

a/ after Moody (1974)

true when the anal fin was clipped. Fin clipping does not appear to affect growth (Ricker, 1949). Follis (1972) used air injected (120-140 psi) fluorescent particles (50-350 microns) to mass mark 6-13 cm bass. These fish were 100 percent identifiable after 12 months and 80 percent after 30 months. Carlson and Shealy (1972) used 85 Sr to mark bass eggs and fry. Fry 1-7 days after hatching took up more Sr than did eggs. Marked fry could be detected for several months. Pritchard (1972) cold branded (-80°C) 100 mm bass. The brands were 100 percent identifiable after 10 months, but mortality was 67 percent versus 43 percent for controls.

Many types of tags have been used on largemouth bass with varying results (Table XXIX). Huish and Copeland (1963) found no difference in the percentage return of strap tags versus Petersen tags. White and Beamish (1972) found no difference in return (p>0.05) of spaghetti tags versus Frazer tags. However, strap tags attached to the mouth area interfered with growth (Tebo, 1957; Wegener, 1966). Fish marked with anchor tags had a 30 percent loss and 61 percent mortality after 10 months.

The use of different Floy<sup>(R)</sup> dart tags has resulted in differences in length of time the tags are retained (Table XXX). In many cases the anchor was not pulled out of the fish, but the plastic tubing was pulled off the anchor attachment. Ten cm bass will rapidly shed Floy<sup>(R)</sup> tag FTF-69-(R. Amick, personal communication).

# 6 PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT

- 6.1 Regulatory (legislative) measures
  - 6.11 Limitation or reduction of total catch

The Black Bass Act was passed by the United States legislature in 1926. This law prevented the interstate transport of black bass for sale. Since that time all states have legislated against the sale of black bass which are caught in the wild, thus assuring their status as a sport fish.

In the U.S.A. in 1974, three states had a 23-cm, seven a 25 cm, and four a 30 cm minimum size limit. In addition, fourteen states have a minimum size limit, from 25 to 45 cm, on certain waters. Creel limits average 9 (5-25) bass per day. Thirty-four states have a continuous season, while eight states have a special season; most of these regulations protect the bass from angling during spawning (Fox, 1975). Regulations in a number of other countries are given in Table I.

Quota limits are used on relatively few lakes. The State of Alabama attempts to limit the annual yield of largemouth bass in its State-owned public fishing lakes (13) to 35 percent of the standing crop. Only trophy size bass of at least 2.3 kg are allowed to be creeled after the quota has been reached (Powell, 1975).

> 6.12 Protection of portions of population (see for season limits and for length limits)

Minimum length limits of 253-306 mm are being applied in a number of areas (see 6.11). In studies of length limits by Choate (1970), Martin et al. (1964) and Prosser (1973) no beneficial effects were demonstrated for the bass population nor was there evidence of improvement in size composition of the bluegill population. Ming and McDonald (1975) attributed these results to a lack of a strong year class of bass in the population before the length limit was established. However, Schneider (1971) found no change in the largemouth bass population in a 55 ha Michigan lake which was closed to fishing for 5 years. In a Missouri lake (97 ha) which had been heavily fished, a 306 mm length limit on largemouth bass increased the catch rate (Ming and McDonald, 1975). Gulish (1970) and Sheridan (1962) found an increased harvest of larger bluegill, but no appreciable change in harvest in bass after a size limit was applied.

Length limits of 354-404 mm are currently under investigation in the U.S.A.

Several methods besides length limits, creel limits, closed season and quotas have been investigated in an attempt to reduce the initial large harvest of bass (see 4.24) after opening (2-3) years after stocking) of a new lake. An initial 16 day catch and release period (286 h/ha) did not reduce the opening week catch, in that 40 percent of the adult population was removed in the first 4 days with 93 h/ha of effort (Redmond, 1974). Allowing the lake to be fished immediately after stocking led to an overabundance of bluegill within 3 years. A midwinter opening was also unsuccessful (Redmond, 1974). By not allowing approximately 40-90 percent of the area of a new lake to be fished, the initial 40-70 percent harvest of bass is spread out over several months instead of 1 or 2 weeks (Redmond, 1974; Hill and Shell, 1975).

# 6.2 <u>Control or alteration of physical</u> <u>features of the environment</u>

6.21 Regulation of flow

The maximum current velocity acceptable at the intake of electrical power generating plants is currently under investigation. At the present time no flow regulations are enforced.

> 6.22 Control of water levels (for benefits in recruitment see 4.33; for aquatic weed control see 6.41)

Control of water levels is an important management tool, but desirable water levels for bass may conflict with flood control projects, hydroelectric generating requirements, or waterfowl management needs.

6.23 Control of erosion and silting

In most cases control of erosion and silting involves planting the watershed with suitable vegetation, riprapping the shoreline, and fencing cattle from the water. Colloidal clay can be settled by adding gypsum or organic material such as chopped hay (Bennett, 1971). Even though bass can feed in turbid water (see 3.41), high turbidity limits primary and secondary production thus reducing standing crops and growth rate of bass (Buck, 1956) and adversely affects spawning.

# 6.24 Fishways at artificial and natural obstructions

Schafer and Greagan (1958) reported 540 bass going up the Lake Chicot, Louisiana, fishway in 1955, and 270 in 1956.

6.25 Fish screens

Because of the escape of bass and other fishes over spillways (see 3.51), screening is recommended (Lewis, Heidinger and Konikoff, 1968). At the present time a practical screen for large reservoirs has not been developed and tested. The escape of fish from lakes and reservoirs is one of the most serious problems in inland fish management at this time.

> 6.26 Improvement of spawning grounds (for improvement in culture situations see 7.3)

Natural spawning grounds have seldom been successfully improved except by controlling water levels (see 4.33). Vogele and Rainwater (1975) found that largemouth bass preferentially (P>0.20) nested near brush shelters especially early in the spawning season. James (1936) used 500 floating bass nests (0.8 cm x 10 cm wooden frame filled with rocks) in a reservoir subject to violent water level fluctuations. He noted heavy utilization, but the contribution to the year class was not determined.

6.27 Habitat improvement

Various types of habitat improvements have been made. In farm ponds it is desirable to fence cattle from the pond to prevent erosion and excess turbidity. Protection of the watershed by plants is also desirable. Some acid stripmine waters have been neutralized with lime or by running water through them from a well buffered source.

Numerous attempts have been made to destratify lakes (Toetz, Wilhm and Summerfelt, 1972), but changes in bass populations have not been documented.

The effect on catch rate of leaving standing timber in new lakes has been investigated in several studies (Table XXXI). In general there is a greater harvest per ha in the timbered areas because of increased fishing effort.

It is extremely difficult to maintain population balance (see 4.5 for definition) in small ponds. Hooper (1970) determined balance in 33 Alabama ponds ranging in size from 0.07 to 0.10 ha. He found only 7 in balance after 2 years. Hooper (1970), citing Kelley, reported 68 percent of the ponds larger than 0.10 ha were in balance after 2 years. However, Hooper and Reeves (1975) found only 5 of 40 (0.20-0.40 ha) to be in balance after 2 years. These ponds had been stocked with the recommended 2 470 bream (bluegill and redear) and 247 bass/ha.

- 6.3 <u>Control or alteration of chemical</u> <u>features of the environment</u>
  - 6.31 Water pollution control

In the U.S.A. with the establishment of state and federal environment protection agencies, minimum water quality standards have been set and are being enforced by fines. One problem has been to establish a monetary value for largemouth bass. TAELE XXXI

Harvest of largemouth bass from cleared and non-cleared areas of a lake

|  | Ω.   | Standing timber       |                          | C1                                   | Cleared area        |                          |                         |
|--|--|-----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Lake   | Catch<br>No./h                               | Catch rate<br>h kg/h  | Angling<br>effort<br>(%) | <u>Catch rate</u><br>No./h kg        | rate<br>kg/h        | Angling<br>effort<br>(%) | Reference               |
| Lake<br>CA (2 884 ha) <sup>a</sup> /   | 0.17 <sup>b/</sup><br>(0.15-0.18) <u>d</u> / |                       | 75                       | 0.25<br>(0.16-0.33)                  |                     | 25                       | Bartholomew (1972)      |
| Bussy Lake <sup>C/</sup><br>LA (891 ha)  | 0.71<br>(0.45-0.97)                          | 0.39<br>(0.33-0.48)   | 50-90                    | 0.73 0.41<br>(0.47-1.00) (0.28-0.51) | 0.41<br>(0.28–0.51) | 50-100                   | Davis and Hughes (1971) |
| a/ Timbered area 2.5 ha or 0.26%<br>b/ Average of 3 years<br>c/ Approximately 17 km of timber in<br>d/ Range | .5 ha. or 0.26%<br>.rrs<br>' km of timber in | n bands 91-137 m wide | m wide                   |                                      |                     |                          |                         |

The Southern Division of the American Fisheries Society recommended the following values be used for recovery of damages from pollution-caused bass kills in the southeast (Sherry, 1971):

| Length | Value  | Length | Value  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| (cm)   | U.S.\$ | (cm)   | U.S.\$ |
| 2,53   | 0.20   | 17.71  | 1.00   |
| 5,06   | 0.25   | 20.24  | 1.25   |
| 7,59   | 0.35   | 22.77  | 1.50   |
| 10,12  | 0.50   | 25.30  | 1.75   |
| 12,65  | 0.65   | 27.83  | 2.00   |
| 15.18  | 0.75   | 30.36  | 2.25   |

Bass larger than 454 g (approximately 30 cm) were valued at U.S.\$ 5.00/kg. Similar values were placed on bass by the State of Illinois Department of Conservation (Lopinot, 1971). However, based on angler expenditures, Bennett and Durham (1951) estimated bass to be worth U.S.\$ 19.12/kg.

#### 6.32 Salinity control

No information available.

# 6.33 Artificial fertilization of waters

Hooper (1975) briefly reviewed the use of inorganic fertilizers to increase bass production. Based primarily on the work of Swingle at Auburn University, Auburn, Alabama, Hooper concluded that commercial fertilizer mixtures of 8-8-2 (112 kg/ha/year) can be used to increase production of fish in new ponds. The catch of largemouth bass from relatively infertile ponds stocked with a combination of bass and bluegill more than doubled as a result of fertilization. Ponds which have been fertilized 3-5 years with 8-8-2 can then be maintained with phosphate only (16.8 kg/ha/year tripple superphosphate), thus reducing the cost by approximately 70 percent.

## 6.4 <u>Control or alteration of biological</u> features of the environment

#### 6.41 Control of aquatic vegetation

The largemouth bass often occupies waters which support a luxurious growth of aquatic vegetation. It is likely that in many cases this vegetation serves as a substrate for larval insects or other food organisms utilized by the bass. Also, the vegetation may serve as a refuge area and ensure survival of the young bass. Aquatic weed control is practised, however, in an attempt to improve bass fishing. Weed control serves to eliminate the refuge area for small fishes and makes them more susceptible to capture by the bass, and to improve accessibility to fishing grounds. Methods of control of aquatic vegetation include the use of herbicides, fertilization, mechanical removal, water level manipulation, and attempts at biological control.

With a few exceptions, invertebrates or plants have not been introduced to increase the yield of largemouth bass. The bluegill sunfish is the species most commonly stocked in combination with the largemouth and as forage for it. This practice is used particularly in small ponds and lakes. In recent years the threadfin shad has been widely used in large reservoirs as forage for largemouth bass.

Range (1971) found no increase in growth rate of 1, 2 and 3 year old bass within 2 years after threadfin shad were introduced into Dale Hollow (12 540 ha), Tennessee. Numerical change or population structure changes were not investigated. The threadfin shad was introduced into Lake Havasu, California in 1954. All age groups of bass showed improved growth (Kimsey, Hagy and McCammon, 1957). Similar trends were found after threadfin were introduced into Lake Nacimiento, California (von Geldrin and Mitchell, 1975). However, Miller (1971) concluded that threadfin in Pine Flat Lake, California decreased the growth of 1 year old bass. A mail survey of state agencies (von Geldrin and Mitchell, 1975) concluded that the threadfin shad is a desirable forage fish for bass (also see 4.33).

Atherina mochon was introduced as forage in Sardinia (Cottiglia, 1968). In Kenya, <u>Tilapia</u> <u>nigra</u> was added for forage (Harrison, 1936). McCaig and Mullan (1960) found no change in the bass population in a 10 117 ha Mississippi lake after the introduction of smelt (<u>Osmerus mordax</u>).

In the late sixties <u>Tilapia aurea</u> were inadvertently introduced into Lake Trinidad, a power plant cooling reservoir in Texas. Recruitment of the northern largemouth bass ceased and annual stocking of the Florida subspecies since 1972 has failed to result in successful spawns. In spite of high survival and rapid growth of the stocked bass, tilapia densities of 2 240 kg/ha were reported (Noble, Germany and Hall, 1975).

6.43 Control of parasites and diseases

Because of the expense, very little parasite or disease control has been attempted except under culture situations (see 7.6).

#### 6.44 Control of predation and competition

Fish toxicants, traps, seines and electrofishing have all been used in an attempt to change population composition. Dense populations of bluegill exhibit slow growth, subcatchable size, and may prevent bass recruitment. Many attempts have been made to either reduce or eliminate these populations especially in ponds and small lakes. Complete renovation with rotenone has in general been the most successful.

47

| TABLE XXXII | is of complete or partial removal of fish on the remaining fish population |
|-------------|--|
|             | of con   |
|             | Effects  |

| Lake and location                  | Removal method               | Fish removed  | Comments  | Reference                           |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|---|---|-------------------------------------|
| 14 lakes, MI                       | Seine                        | 109 kg/ha for 25 years,<br>primarily carp and brown<br>bullheads                                      | No effect on rough fish<br>population or on total<br>pounds of game fish  | Moyle, Kuehan and Burrows<br>(1949) |
| Bass lake, IN<br>(648 ha)          | Seine                        | 99 kg/ha of carp, suckers<br>and buffalo  | Water cleared; average<br>catch of bass/seine haul<br>increased from 0.1 to 0.6   | Ricker and Gottschalk (1941)        |
| Lake Chautauqua, IL<br>(1 442 ha)  | sderT                        | Avg. 93 kg/ha for 5 years,<br>primarily buffalo, carp<br>and shad                                     | Removal of approximately<br>20% of total standing crop<br>of rough fish did not<br>change standing crop of<br>bass population                                 | Starrett and Fritz (1965)           |
| Flora Lake, WI<br>(16.6 ha)        | Traps                        | Rough fish for 5 years  | No change in growth rate<br>of bass but standing crop<br>increased from 4.3 to<br>6.8 kg/ha and yield inc-<br>reased from 15.4 kg in<br>1952 to 66 kg in 1955 | Parker (1958)                       |
| Oklahoma Lake<br>(6.9 ha)          |                              | 2-19% of total standing<br>crop for 4 years, pri-<br>marily bluegill and<br>black bullheads           | No change in bass   | Houser and Grinstead (1962)         |
| Lake Hollingsworth, FL<br>(144 ha) | Seine                        | 270 kg/ha in 2 years<br>(gizzard shad and brown<br>bullheads 96%) pre-<br>standing crop 168-336 kg/ha | Number of bass increased<br>from 2.7/ha to 114/ha;<br>growth rate also increased  | Ware (1971)                         |
| 225 IL ponds<br>(average 0.5 ha)   | Rotenone<br>average 2.3 ppm  | Incomplete removal in 31% of ponds  | Ponds tended to be over-<br>populated with small or<br>undesirable fishin 5 years   | Lopinot (1970)                      |
| Lake Blackshear, OK<br>(3 300 ha)  | Rotenone<br>0.1 ppm          | Gizzard shad reduced from<br>60% to 15% of total<br>standing crop                                     | Shad and bass population<br>reached pretreatment<br>levels within 5 years   | Zeller and Wyatt (1967)             |
| Clear Lake, LA<br>(46 ha)          | Seine                        | 257 kg/ha 90% gizzard<br>shad over 2 year period  | Harvest of bass increased<br>during the following 5<br>years  | Lambou and Stern (1959)             |
| Mediana Lake, TX                   | Drawdown<br>and<br>rotenone  | Primarily gizzard shad  | Increase in condition,<br>numbers and growth during<br>following 2-3 years  | Dietz and Jurgens (1963)            |
| 3 lakes, MI<br>(52-90 ha)          | Antimycin<br>(1.0-1.25 µg/l) | 10-90% of the bluegill  | Did not affect bass   | Lincoln and Smith (1974)            |

However, these ponds often become unbalanced (for definition of balance see 4.5) again within 5 years.

Removal of a portion of a fish population has met with varying success (Table XXXII). Hackney (1974) has shown that assuming that food supply remains constant, 70 percent of the bluegill (by numbers) would have to be removed to increase the average length of bluegill from 10 cm to 15 cm. Thus it does not seem feasible to remove sufficient bluegill by electrofishing (Spencer, 1967), by trapping or by destroying their nest. Balance in ponds was obtained with several shoreline applications of rotenone by Hooper and Crance (1960), Swingle (1954), and Smith, White and Hooper (1975).

The use of rotenone for the selective reduction of overcrowded fish populations in bodies of water from 0.4 to 12 141 ha spread rapidly during the fifties. Pond treatments were intended primarily to reduce overcrowded sunfish populations, but in large bodies of water the target species also included gizzard shad, carp, drum (Aplodinotus grunniens), and catostomids, as well as other species. Marked improvement in bass reproduction occurred in many waters (Burress, 1975). However, the benefits lasted only 2-5 years and did not justify the cost (Burress, 1975; Stroud and Martin, 1968). By 1965 this management technique had become restricted to small bodies of water (Jenkins, 1970; Burress, 1975). Bennett (1971) recommends thinning before bass spawning season or immediately after bluegill spawning season. Swingle, Prather and Lawrence (1953) recommend supplemental stocking of bass fingerlings following poisoning.

Antimycin was introduced in the late sixties and has partly replaced rotenone. It is less toxic to bass than to other centrarchids and is effective in cool water, but is ineffective at high pH. For a recent review of reclamation of ponds, lakes and streams with rotenone and antimycin see Lennon <u>et al.</u> (1970) and Schnick (1974a and 1974b).

# 6.45 Population manipulation

"Super predators" such as the muskellunge (Gammon and Hasler, 1965) have been added to existing bass populations containing excessive numbers of slow-growing forage fishes. In most cases no change in bass or forage fish populations have been documented. At present in the U.S.A. striped bass are being stocked in many of the large reservoirs in an attempt to utilize the large gizzard shad populations. Changes in the bass populations due to the introduction of striped bass have not been clearly demonstrated.

Lake drawdown has been demonstrated to increase the vulnerability of forage fishes and increase feeding activity of bass (Heman, Campbell and Redmond, 1969; Bennett, 1962). Heman, Campbell and Redmond (1969) found an increase in bass growth rate after a drawdown. However, when weak bass populations are present at the time of a lake drawdown, mathematical computation demonstrates that little change in the weight of the forage fish population can be expected as a result of bass predation. Pierce, Frey and Yawn (1964) made similar findings for 15 Alabama lakes. Probably of more importance is the possibility of development of a strong year class of bass when the lake refills, as was found by Hulsey (1957) and Bennett, Adkins and Childers (1969). Wegener and Williams (1974) reported the effects of a drawdown on Lake Tohopekaliga, Florida, where 50 percent of the lake bottom was exposed for nearly 6 months (Table XXXIII).

# 6.5 Artificial stocking

#### 6.51 Maintenance stocking

Unless preceded by at least partial renovation, maintenance stocking of fry or fingerling largemouth

#### TABLE XXXIII

Largemouth bass standing crop in Lake Tohopekaliga, Florida (9 186 ha), before and after a 6 month drawdown of 50% of surface area (after Wegner and Williams, 1974)

|          | Before o       | lrawdown       |                | Af             | ter drawd                                    | owna/  | INCOMPANY CONTRACTOR                           |
|----------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|--|--|--|
|          | Spring<br>1970 | Autumn<br>1970 | Autumn<br>1971 | Spring<br>1972 | Autumn<br>1972                               | Spring<br>1973   | Autumn<br>1973                                 |
|          | ,              |                | Number/ha      | ł              | aning an | nga galandaki dalam tanan dan menangkan yang dan galan dari da | Andre Alfred Charges Actual Growman and an and |
| Littoral | 215            | 168            |                | 1 268          | 724  | 111  | 277  |
| Limnetic | 79             | 17             | 12             | 72             | 44   | 25   | 25   |
|          |                |                | Kg/ha          |                |  |  |  |
| Littoral | 53             | 38             | Kg/ha<br>39    | 56             | 72   | 28   | 54   |
| Limnetic | 8              | 9              | 4              | 3              | 3  | 3  | 7  |

a/ Spring 1971

bass has been ineffective in reducing overcrowded forage fish populations (Clark, 1964; Kempinger, 1969; Lagler and DeRoth, 1952; Viosca, 1945; McKay, 1960; Jackson, 1958; Swingle, 1945; Carlander and Moorman, 1957).

Fieldhouse (1971) stocked 1 350 3 cm bass in a 62 ha lake. Over the following 3 years they constituted 42 percent, 36 percent and 18 percent of that year class respectively.

Fast (1966) stocked bass ranging in size from fingerling to fish 0.7 kg in weight in El Capitán Reservoir, California. Few of the small fish survived, but 56 percent of the large bass were caught by the end of the second year.

Stroud and Bitzer (1955) estimated 65 percent survival for adult bass salvaged from closed water supplies and restocked in public waters. They estimated that 11 percent of these fish were ultimately caught.

In general, because of culture limitations, large numbers of bass greater than 3 cm in length have not been available for use in research or management.

- 6.52 Transplantation; introduction (for world wide introduction and distribution see 2.1 and Table V)
- 6.53 Stocking combinations (ponds) (for introduction of forage fishes into large reservoirs see 6.42)

The use of various stocking combinations has usually been limited to small lakes. Dillard and Novinger (1975) and Wenger (1972) have recently reviewed the U.S.A. literature concerning largemouth bass stocking techniques.

In the U.S.A. during the early 1900s it was believed that poor fishing was caused by a lack of fish and could be corrected by stocking fry. H.S. Swingle was one of the first investigators to demonstrate that in small ponds at least, poor fishing was strongly correlated with an overabundance of small and intermediate size forage fish (especially bluegill) or largemouth bass. Much research has been undertaken to develop stocking combinations which maintain a balanced (see 4.5) population.

The stocking combinations for small lakes currently recommended by 17 state agencies in the U.S.A. are given in Table XXXIV. The bassbluegill combination has been most frequently used. However, many experimental stocking combinations have been tried and some of these are listed in Table XXXV. Note that most of these studies are limited to the 1 or 2 year period following stocking.

Monospecific stockings of bass in Illinois ponds resulted in standing crops as high as or higher than bass stocked in combination with other species. Growth rate, however, was slower (Buck and Thoits, 1970). Monospecific stockings of bass in Alabama ponds also resulted in reduced growth (Swingle and Smith, 1943). Monospecific stockings of bass in 4 Oregon ponds resulted in growth rates superior to those in 9 comparable ponds stocked. with bass-bluegill (Bond et al., 1958). In Canadian ponds Johnson and McCrimmon (1967) found a smaller weight gain in bass-bluegill ponds (adult bluegill stocked) than bass alone (362 g after 3 years). Of the various combinations they investigated, bass-golden shiner combinations exhibited the poorest growth. Swingle (1949) and Ball (1952) found a faster growth rate when golden shiners were stocked with bass than when bass were stocked with bluegill, but they used fingerling bluegill rather than adults. Ball and Tait (1952) reported that when bass were stocked with fingerling bluegill, at age 2+ they had attained a length of 21 cm; when stocked with adult bluegill, at age 2+ they had reached 27 cm.

Some forage species such as the fathead minnow (<u>Pimephales promelas</u>) (Elrod, 1971; Ball and Ford, 1953) and <u>Gambusia</u> (Swingle, 1949) are eliminated after a few years when bass are present. Some species are reduced but not eliminated after the introduction of bass. In general, Swingle (1960) found that after 1 year when 93-896 bass fry were stocked with <u>Tilapia mossambica</u> or <u>T. nilotica</u> (subsequently identified as <u>T. aurea</u>), the number of tilapia per ha was reduced by 50-75 percent and the  $A_{\rm T}$  value increased.

Regier (1966) stocked 1 000 golden shiners and 247 fingerling bass/ha in 0.06-0.21 ha New York ponds with the results shown in Table XXXVI. Five years after stocking, most of the shiner populations were eliminated or reduced to a standing crop of less than 17 kg/ha.

Bass and channel catfish are often stocked together in small ponds. Little difference in bass yield was noted between fed and unfed fish populations (Table XXXVII). With 0.9 kg bass present in a pond approximately 19 cm channel catfish must be stocked to avoid elimination of the catfish by the bass (Krummrich and Heidinger, 1973).

F1 hybrid sunfish, predominately male, have been used to prevent excess reproduction and overcrowding in ponds. In a 0.4 ha pond, Childers and Bennett (1967) stocked 417 fingerling bass, 8 male redear and 3 female green sunfish. During a 6 year period, mean fishing effort was 519 (82-771) h/ha/ year and the average bass yield was 75 (4-118) kg/ha/year. Harvest of hybrids averaged 136 (12-323) kg/ha/year. At the end of 6 years the standing crop of bass was 117 kg/ha plus 20 kg/ha of hybrids.

| XXXIV |
|-------|
| PABLE |

Species combinations and numbers per ha currently recommended by several states for stocking ponds (after Dillard and Novinger, 1975)

| State<br>(U.S.A.)  | Stocking recommendation <sup>a/b/</sup> C/  |
|--|---|
| Alabama<br>Arkansas  | 247 LMB spring after 2 471 BG(85%) and RE(15%) preceding autumn and winter; unfertilized <sup>1</sup> density<br>247 LMB, 500 to 1 236 to 2 471 BG and RE, all same autumn: flexible by fertility and availability of fish  |
| Georgia  |   |
| Illinois   | 124 to 247 LMB with 500 to 1 236 to 2 471 BG, RE or BG(70%) and RE(30%); all same autumn or LMB spring after sunfish preceding autumn; rate adjusted according to fertility   |
| Indiana  | 494 LMB with 2 471 BG, or $BG(70\%)$ and $RE(30\%)$ ; all same autumn   |
| Lowa   | 247 LWB spring after 2 471 BG preceding autumn  |
| Kansas   | 247 LWB spring after 247 BG preceding autumn  |
| Kentucky   | 296 LMB spring after 988 BG preceding autumn  |
| Michigan   | 247 LMB with 1 236 BG all late summer; or 494 LMB with 2 471 to 4 942 GSH or FHM stocked when available   |
| Missouri   | 242 LMB spring after 1 236 BG preceding autumn  |
| Nebraska   | 247 LMB with 1 236 BG all same autumn   |
| New York   | 247 LMB late summer after 988 GSH early summer, or 247 LMB with 2 471 BG all same autumn, or 371 LMB alone  |
| Ohio   | 247 LMB June with 1 236 BG late summer same year, or 247 LMB alone  |
| Oklahoma   | 247 LMB with 247 BG all together May to September when available, or LMB spring after BG preceding autumn   |
| Tennessee  | 247 LMB spring after 1 853 BG, or BG(75%) and RE(25%) preceding autumn; unfertilized 185 LMB and 1 236 sunfish  |
| Texas  | 247 LMB spring alone, or after 247 hybrid RE x GS or WM preceding autumn  |
| Wisconsin  | 247 LMB summer alone, or with 988 GSH or FHM  |
| a/ IMB = Largemon<br>WM = Warmouth<br>b/ Channel catfis<br>c/ All states red | LMB = Largemouth bass, BG = Bluegill, RE = Redear sunfish, GS = Green sunfish, GSH = Golden shiner, FHM = Fathead minnow,<br>WM = Warmouth<br>Channel catfish may be included except in Alabama and New York<br>All states recommend fry or fingerlings except golden shiners and fathead minnows which are stocked as adults |

| XXXX  |  |
|-------|--|
| TABLE |  |

(Except where noted standing crops were obtained by draining.) Results of experimental stocking combinations in small lakes.

| Combination<br>(number/ha in parentheses)                   | Pond<br>area<br>(ha) | Duration<br>of study<br>(year) | Standing crop<br>of bass<br>kg/ha | U.S.A.<br>location | Reference              |
|---|----------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Base on v   | 0.28                 | 1.5?                           | 70ª/                              | OR                 | Isaac and Bond (1963)  |
| Bass only (618 fry)   | 1.02                 |                                | 106                               | TX                 | Brown (1951)           |
| Bass only (988 fry)   | 1.02                 | - ° -                          | 86                                | ΤX                 | (as above)             |
| Bass only (495 fry), /                                      | 1。02                 | 1。1                            | 56                                | ΤX                 | (as above)             |
| Bass only $(247 \text{ fry})^{D}$                           | 1                    | 4                              | 37                                | AL                 | Swingle $(1952)$       |
| Bass only (247 fry)   | ł                    | <del>6</del>                   | 30                                | AL                 | Swingle (1951)         |
| Bass only (247 fry)   | 1                    | ~                              | 45                                | AL                 | (as above)             |
| Bass only (59 adults + 247 fingerlings)                     | 7.28                 | 5                              | . 54                              | TL                 | `                      |
| Bass (4 adults)d/   | 3( •4)               | <del>1</del> -0                | 80(24-142)2                       | TL                 | Buck and Thoits (1970) |
| Bass (4 adults) I/  | 3(•4)                | 100                            | 57(24-94)                         | IL                 | (as above)             |
| Bass (494 fry) + goldfish (494 adults) <sup>E/</sup>        | 0.10                 | <del>~~</del>                  | 28                                | AL                 | Swingle (1949)         |
| Bass (494 fry) + golden shiners                             | 0.10                 | <del></del>                    | 83                                | AL                 | (as above)             |
| (494 adults)E/  |                      |                                |                                   | ļ                  |                        |
| Bass (494 fry) + gizzard shad                               | 0 <b>.</b> 10        | ~                              | 119                               | AL                 | (as above)             |
| (oo aaurus) <u>s</u> /<br>Bass (494 fingerlings) + goldfish | 0.10                 | -                              | 190                               | AL                 | (as above)             |
| (494 adults)g/  |                      |                                |                                   | :                  | ,                      |
| Bass (494 fingerlings) + golden shiners                     | 0.10                 | <del></del>                    | 132                               | ЧЬ                 | (as above)             |
| (494 adults)É/  |                      |                                | /u                                | ŀ                  |                        |
| Bass (247 fry) + Gambusia (692 adults) <sup>E/</sup>        | 0.10                 | <del>,</del>                   | 170 <u>-</u> 1/                   | AL                 |                        |
| Bass (371 fingerlings) + golden shiners                     | Avg. of              | 1,5                            | 1 afr                             | TM                 | Lall and Ford (1933)   |
| (4 942 adults) + fathead minnows                            | a number             |                                |                                   |                    |                        |
| (2 471 adults)  | of ponds             |                                |                                   |                    |                        |
|   |                      |                                |                                   |                    |                        |

Schnabel estimate Yield averages 47 kg/ha/year for last 3 years 524 h/ha with a yield of 17 kg/ha Not cropped

म्रोज्ञे शत्म जान्त्र जान्त्र

Range Cropped Forage stocked 1 year before bass Gambusia (<u>Gambusia affinis</u>) eliminated Fatheads eliminated

| IVXXX |  |
|-------|--|
| TABLE |  |

Standing crop and harvest in kg/ha of largemouth bass stocked with golden shiners in New York ponds $^{3}$  (after Regier, 1963)

|      |      |                  | i   |     |     |     |     |     |
|------|------|------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|      | 5    | Standing<br>crop | 132 | 113 | 166 | 185 | 126 | 112 |
|      |      | Harvest          | 9   | 45  | 0   | 0   | 39  | 50  |
|      | 4    | Standing<br>crop | 138 | 96  | 150 | 66  | 150 | 140 |
| ĥ    |      | Harvest          | 45  | 17  | 45  | 11  | 0   | 22  |
| Tear | £    | Standing<br>crop | 144 | 77  | 130 | 85  | 104 | 104 |
|      |      | Harvest          | 11  | 28  | 17  | 0   | 0   | 39  |
|      | N    | Standing<br>crop | 169 | 65  | 49  | 02  | 86  | 68  |
|      | -    | Standing<br>crop | 129 | 25  | 35  | 16  | 52  | 43  |
|      | Pond | number           | 1   | 2   | m   | 4   | L   | 9   |

a/ Zero harvest values are due to no fishing effort

# TABLE XXXVII

Average yield in kg/ha of bass and channel catfish in fed and non-fed Alabama farm ponds (after Grance and McBay, 1966)

| 13.6 174 8.7 62<br>8.7 104<br>3.0 2 165 12.2 753<br>1.2 2 682  | 13.6 174 8.7<br>8.7 104 -<br>3.0 2.165 12.2<br>1.2 682 -<br>7.1 2.649 4.4<br>3.9 1.384 -                                   |    | (ha) | Angling<br>per ha<br>(h) | Firs<br>bass  | <u>First year harvest</u><br>ass channel catfish | Second J<br>bass ch | Second year harvest<br>bass channel catfish |
|--|--|----|------|--------------------------|---------------|--|---------------------|---|
| $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$           | 8 8.7 104 - 5.0<br>5 3.0 2 165 12.2 753 5.0<br>2 1.2 682 - 5.2<br>682 - 5.2<br>5 3.9 1 384 - 3.1<br>247 hass fincerling/ha | 11 | 13.6 | 174                      | 8.7           | 62   |                     | 1   |
| $\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$           | 5 3.0 2 165 12.2 753<br>2 1.2 682 – – – 5.2<br>6 7.1 2 649 4.4 597<br>5 3.9 1 384 – – – 3.1                                | 36 | 8°7  | 104                      | 1             | 1  | 5 <b>.</b> 0        | 37  |
| 942 <u>b</u> / 2 1.2 682 – – – – – – – – – – – – – – – – – – – | 2 1.2 682 5.2<br>6 7.1 2 649 4.4 597 5.1<br>5 3.9 1 384 3.1  |    | Э•О  | 2 165                    | 12 <b>°</b> 2 | 753  | N.                  |   |
| 112b/ 6 7.1 2.6/0 A.A 507                                      | 6 7.1 2.649 4.4 597<br>5 3.9 1.384 3.1<br>207 hass fincerlings/ha  |    | 1.2  | 682                      | I             |  | 5.2                 | 463   |
|  | 5 3.9 1384 3.1<br>207 hass finnes/ha   |    | 7°1  | 2 649                    | 4.4           | 597  |                     |   |
| 5 3.9 1 384 -  | 1.   |    | 3°9  | 1 384                    | I             | 1  | 3 <b>°1</b>         | 587   |

FIR/S115 Largemouth bass

# TABLE XXXVIII

Potential stocking combinations using hybrid sunfish and largemouth bass

ENVIRONMENTAL SITUATION NO. 1

Pond 0.3 ha or more in size, contains no fish (new or reclaimed by poisoning), and wild fishes have no access. Overflow or spillway screened from 1 March to 1 July.

Stocking Recommendation No. 1

| Granian  | Size   | Fish/ha |         |  |
|--|--------|---------|---------|--|
| Species  | (mm)   | fed     | not fed |  |
| Largemouth bass                                | 50-76  | 185     | 124     |  |
| Bluegill x green sunfish F <sub>1</sub> hybrid | 50-102 | 3 706   | 741     |  |
| Redear x green sunfish F <sub>1</sub> hybrid   | 50-102 | 1 236   | 494     |  |
| Channel catfish                                | 76-102 | 1 236   | 247     |  |
| Fathead minnow                                 | adult  | 2 471   | 2 471   |  |

Fishing can be started during the second summer after stocking. In the autumn following stocking and each autumn or spring thereafter, add the following:

| Bluegill x green sunfish F <sub>1</sub> hybrid | 102 and<br>above | 1 236 | 494 |
|--|------------------|-------|-----|
| Redear x green sunfish F <sub>1</sub> hybrid   | 102              | 371   | 247 |
| Channel catfish                                | 152 <b>—</b> 203 | 494   | 124 |

# Stocking Recommendation No. 2

Stocking Recommendation No. 1

| Species              | Size<br>(mm) | Fish/ha<br>not fed |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Male redear          | adult        | 12                 |
| Female green sunfish | adult        | 12                 |
| Largemouth bass      | 50-76        | 185                |

In the third or fourth year repeat sunfish stocking. These fish will not readily utilize artificial feed.

# ENVIRONMENTAL SITUATION NO. 2

Pond less than 0.3 ha in size, contains no fish (new or reclaimed by poisoning), and wild fishes have no access. Overflow or spillway screened from 1 March to 1 July.

| Species   | Size<br>(mm)   | Fish/ha<br>not fed                                |
|---|----------------|---|
| Redear x green sunfish F <sub>1</sub> hybrid<br>Largemouth bass   | 5076<br>5076   | 1 979<br>185                                      |
| Stocking Recommendation No. 2                                     |                | alan a duna ya ana ana ana ana ana ana ana ana an |
| Species   | Size<br>(mm)   | <u> </u>  |
| Bluegill x green sunfish F <sub>1</sub> hybrid<br>Largemouth bass | 50-76<br>50-76 | 7 413<br>185                                      |

Based on preliminary work, Lewis and Heidinger (1973) have recommended further evaluation of the stocking combinations shown in Table XXXVIII.

#### 7 POND FISH CULTURE

## 7.1 Use of cultured fish

At the present time most of the cultured largemouth bass are used for stocking. More than 42 million largemouth bass fingerlings were produced in U.S.A. federal and state fish hatcheries during 1967 (Snow, 1969). Usually when they are raised as a food fish, bass are used in polyculture schemes to prevent overpopulation by large forage organisms. As a frozen food product, bass can be kept for long periods because of the low fat content (Mraz, Kimiotek and Frankenberger, 1961). However, Snow and Lovell (1974) found that bass fed on OMP (see 7.2) had good texture and appearance. but were inferior in flavour to bass fed on forage fish. Chatfield (1940) reported the chemical composition of bass to be 980 cal/kg with 26.6 percent protein, 1.8 percent fat, 1.2 percent ash and 76.7 percent water. The dressed weight of largemouth bass is 44 percent of its whole body weight (Mraz, Kimiotek and Frankenberger, 1961). Goodyear and Boyd (1972) found that the elemental composition of bass did not vary with size and listed the various values as follows:

| Element    | <u>Approximate g/100 g</u><br>dry weight |
|------------|--|
| Nitrogen   | 11.5                                     |
| Phosphorus | 3.8                                      |
| Sulphur    | 1.0                                      |
| Calcium    | 6.5                                      |
| Potassium  | 1.4                                      |
| Sodium     | 0.4                                      |
| Magnesium  | 0.2                                      |
|            | mg dry weight                            |
| Iron       | 34                                       |
| Manganese  | 5  |
| Zinc       | 5<br>48                                  |
| Copper     | 6  |
|            |  |

# 7.2 Procurement and maintenance of stock

Largemouth bass have been propagated since the late 1800s (Arnold and Isaac, 1882). Mature bass are either captured from the wild prior to spring spawning, or they are held in hatchery ponds. Initially they were maintained on fresh beef heart, liver or live forage fish such as goldfish (<u>Carassius auratus</u>) (Wiebe, 1935). Snow (1971a) found no difference in fecundity of age I, II and III largemouth bass raised on Oregon Moist Pellets (OMP) (Hublou, 1963) as compared to those raised on a natural diet. Bass fed OMP averaged 84 400 (43 400-125 800) ova/kg. Hatching success for these eggs ranged from 2.3 to 92 percent as opposed to 35 to 97 percent for bass fed on natural food. Five year old bass appear to be equal or superior to 1-4 year old bass in egg production. The number of eggs produced on a number/kg basis is less for age I bass than for older fish (Snow, 1973).

Snow (1970) estimated annual loss of brood fish to be 10-30 percent. Brood bass larger than 2 kg are difficult to handle, thus he recommends replacing 25-33 percent of the brood fish annually. Malformed individuals should be culled.

The brood bass must be fed well in the late summer and autumn before spring spawning. In order to ensure the development of a large egg mass, the brood fish should gain 50-100 percent of their body weight annually (Snow, 1970).

# 7.3 Genetic selection of stock

The present author knows of no coefficients of hereditability for any desirable culture traits in largemouth bass. Bass that have been held under hatchery conditions for several generations appear to learn to accept artificial feed better. In fish from the wild, Snow (1971b) concluded 60-65 percent acceptance of OMP to be normal, whereas 90-95 percent of bass from his hatchery strain accepted the feed. Similarly, Flickinger and Langlois (1975) found they could train 91 percent of the fry produced by their hatchery brood fish, but only 58 percent of those produced from Lake St. Clair brood fish could be trained.

Prather (1951) selectively bred bass for better food conversion on natural forage. Initial food conversion averaged 7.3 SD  $\pm$  1.12; after 5 generations of selection the average was 3.4 SD  $\pm$  0.26.

7.4 Induced spawning

(see endocrine systems and hormones 3.44)

During the spawning season, Wilbur and Langford (1974) injected 50 male bass and 106 female bass with 4 000 IU of human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG)/kg. Milt production was increased or maintained in 80 percent of the males and 63 percent of the females ovulated. Ninety percent of the females which ovulated required only one injection. Most females ovulated within 48 h after injection. Ovulated eggs, if not stripped and fertilized, became nonviable within 12 to 16 h after ovulation. HCG concentrations greater than 4 000 IU did not increase ovulation. The author confirmed Stevens' (1966) findings.

By holding brood fish in indoor tanks at  $17^{\circ}C_{\circ}$ , spawning was delayed several months (Brauhn, Holz and Anderson, 1972). Carlson (1973) raised bass

```
TABLE XXXIX
```

Production of 15-20 mm largemouth bass fry in fertilized spawning ponds

| Hatchery       | Pond area (ha) | No. of<br>ponds | Brood fish/<br>ha                     | Brood fish<br>size (kg) | Production/ha                                       | Reference     |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|---|---------------|
| Jasper, TX     |                | 1               |                                       |                         | 336 000   | Wiebe (1935)  |
| (as above)     | 0.12           | 1               | 370 <sup>a</sup> /                    | 2.3                     | 867 000   | (as above)    |
| (as above)     | 0.12           | 1               | 370 <sup>a</sup> /                    | 1.8                     | 470 000   | (as above)    |
| (as above)     | 0.08           | 1               | 556 <sup>a</sup> /                    | 1.0                     | 478 000   | (as above)    |
| (as above)     | 0,12           | 1               | 436 4                                 | 0.8                     | 314 000   | (as above)    |
| Tishomingo, OK | 0.30-0.68      | 4               | 235-1 100 <sup>ª/</sup>               |                         | average 179 000<br>(146 000-240 000) <sup>d</sup> / | Topel (1949)  |
| San Marcos, TX | 0.50           | 1               | 91 <sup>b</sup> /                     |                         | 567 000   | Bishop (1968) |
| (as above)     | 0.40           | 1               | 91 <sup>b/</sup><br>99 <sup>c</sup> / | mat                     | 636 000   | (as above)    |
| Gatliff, KY    | 0.60           | 1               | 203                                   | 0.3-1.2                 | 950 000   | Clark (1950)  |

a/ Sex ratio approximately 1:1

b/ 2:1 males to females

o/ 3:1 males to females

d/ Range

at 10<sup>°C</sup> in tanks. When subjected to increasing length of day or a continuous 12 h day, the fish spawned on nylon mats when the water temperature was raised to 20<sup>°C</sup>. At this temperature spawning took place within 39 days, in December, January, February, March, June and July. Hormones were not used:

# 7.5 Culture methods

# 7.51 Extensive

Brood fish are placed in recently filled ponds which are free of wild fish. Production of 15-20 mm fry commonly exceeds 500 000/ha (Table XXXIX). Fry are either left in the spawning ponds or they are moved to rearing ponds. The rearing ponds are usually fertilized to produce a zooplankton bloom. Ordinarily if a pond is used for spawning, it is not fertilized. Rogers (1968) found that in culture ponds bass less than 15 mm in length ate primarily copepods and cladocerans while larger fish ate mostly midge larvae. There is considerable variation in the number of fingerlings produced; however, standing crops of 100 kg/ha are common (Table XL). Much of the variation in these results is due to cannibalism. Because of cannibalism, it is biologically and economically difficult to produce bass larger than 8 cm at practical population densities by the extensive method of culture. Marzolf (1954) stocked 9 clean ponds with 2 470-8 650 fry/ha. After 2 years the standing crop averaged 80 (49-171) kg/ha of 17 cm fish. Survival averaged 32 (9-75) percent. Our laboratory has used nursery ponds to produce 25 cm bass. Production records for this work are shown in Table XLI. Yields averaged 368 fish/ha. Species of forage fish which appear to be well suited for propagation as bass food include goldfish, European carp, fathead minnow, golden shiner, and Tilapia spp. (Snow, 1970).

# 7.52 Intensive

The intensive method of raising largemouth bass involves training them to accept artificial feed. The following procedure for intensively raising largemouth bass was developed by Jack Snow at the Marion, Alabama, National Fish Hatchery (Snow, 1970, 1971b, 1975).

- A. Well fed male and female brood fish (see 7.2) are maintained in separate ponds for several weeks following normal time of spawning in order to avoid loss of eggs due to sudden drops in temperature.
- B. Only ripe brood fish are moved into the unfertilized spawning pond (185 small or 94 large brood fish/ha). A stocking ratio of 3 males to 2 females is recommended.
- C. Spawning may be on natural substrate, but a nylon spawning mat can be used (Chastain and Snow, 1966). The number of fry produced/ha should range from 250 000 to 370 000.
  - a. If no spawning mats are used the eggs are allowed to hatch and the 10-15 mm fry are moved to nursery ponds by trapping or seining. They are graded and stocked 123 000-185 000 fry/ha) in nursery ponds which have been fertilized to produce large numbers of zooplankters. Before stocking, the fish may be treated for disease (see 7.6). In approximately 30 days the bass will reach 30-40 mm with 75-90 percent survival and a total standing crop of 84-100 kg/ha. Some selected production values are given in Table XL.

| R     |  |
|-------|--|
| TABLE |  |

Production of fingerling largemouth bass in fertilized rearing ponds stocked with 15-20 mm fry (except where footnoted) and fed on naturally occuring invertebrates or forage fish. Range in parentheses

| Hatchery<br>(U.S.A.)  | Pond area<br>(ha)   | No. of<br>ponds | Stocked/ha   | Average %<br>survival | Ha      | Harvesta/<br>number/kg   | Production<br>kg/ha     | Days<br>approx. | Reference      |
|---|---|-----------------|--|-----------------------|---------|--------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Natchitoches, LA  | I   | 19              | 42 000-50 000  | 38(3–62)b/            | 3       | approx. 220              | 1                       | 60              | Meehean (1940) |
| Marion, ALC/  | 1   | 5               | 50 000   | 38(3-74)              | I       | approx. <sup>-</sup> 220 | 1                       | 100             | (as above)     |
| Welaka, FL  | 0°8   | Ŋ               | 37 000   | 74(48–86)             | I       | approx。220               | average 110<br>(82-197) | I               | (as above)     |
| Welaka, FL <sup>d/</sup>  | 0.8   | ŝ               | 000. LE  | 43(6–68)              | 1       | approx. 183              | I                       | 1               | (as above)     |
| Fairport, IA  | 1.2   | ٢               | 50 000   | 33                    | 1       | I                        | 1                       | I               | Wiebe (1935)   |
| Tupelo, MI.   | 1.2   | ۲               | 19. 000  | 31                    | I       | I                        | 1                       | 1               | (as above)     |
| Lonoke, AK <sup>e</sup> / <sup>±</sup> /  | 0.3   | ر_م<br>م        | 11 600   | 86(57–103)            | 57-144  | ł                        | i                       | 120             | Hogan (1933)   |
| Lonoke, AKE/  | 0.3   | 8               | 7 300-11.600   | 94(86–100)            | 82–108  | I                        | 1                       | 120             | (as above)     |
| Lonoke, AK <sup>d</sup>   | avg. 1.6<br>(0.7-2.8)   | 13              | 25 000-35 000  | 44(15-68)             | 76–126. | I                        | I                       | 210             | (as above)     |
| Hebron, OH  | 0.4   | 7               | 124 000  | 38(12–86)             | 30-134  | I                        | average 75<br>(48-109)  | I               | Morgan (1960)  |
| Marion, AL  | 0°04-0.2  | 10              | 12 000-40 000 71(61-84)  | .71(61–84)            | I       | average 202<br>(134-317) | average 112<br>(69-177) | 46              | Snow (1970)    |
|   | erage 579/kg,   | 76 mm fis       | 51 mm fish average 579/kg, 76 mm fish average 191/kg (Meehean, 1940) | g (Meehean, 1         | 940)    |                          |                         |                 |                |
| <ul> <li>Mange</li> <li>Stocked with 123-240 adult bluegill,</li> <li>Stocked with forage minnows</li> <li>Ponds not fertilized</li> <li>Stocked fish averaged 32 mm</li> <li>Stocked with 32-63 mm fish</li> </ul> | 123-240 adúlt<br>forage minnows<br>tilized<br>averaged 32 mn<br>32-63 mm fish | bluegill,       | Лпа  |                       |         |                          |                         |                 |                |
|   |   |                 |  |                       |         |                          |                         |                 |                |

| Pond<br>number | Area<br>(ha) | Number of fingerlings<br>stocked | Number<br>harvested | Recovery<br>% | Size<br>TL (cm)       |
|----------------|--------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1              | 0.8          | 600                              | 227                 | 38            | 20-28                 |
| 2              | 1.2          | 500                              | 367                 | 73            | 18-28                 |
| 3              | 1.0          | 550                              | 197                 | 36            | 25 <b></b> 30         |
| 4              | 2.2          | 1 400                            | 980                 | 70            | 2 <b>5</b> 30<br>1830 |
| 5              | 4.9          | 2 400                            | 1 924               | 80            | 15-25                 |
| 6              | 1.7          | 900                              | 363                 | 40            | 20-30                 |

Largemouth bass harvest from nursery ponds on the Crab Orchard National Wildlife Refuge, Williamson County, Illinois, in the winter of  $1974-1975^{a/2}$ 

TABLE XLI

a/ All ponds were renovated in the spring of 1974 with rotenone and stocked with adult golden shiners, fathead minnows and lake chubsuckers at a rate of 5 kg/ha bf each plus 5 pairs of adult threadfin shad/ha

b. Many types of substrates can be used for a spawning mat. These include nylon, conservation webbing, rock, and Spanish moss. A mat size of 7 cm x 15 cm is sufficient (Chastain and Snow, 1966). At the stocking rate for brood fish given above, 77 mats/ha should be used. The mats are most effective in ponds having a silt or mud bottom. Some success has been obtained in transferring the mats with eggs to a rearing pond and allowing the eggs to hatch (Chastain and Snow, 1966). Carlson (1973) hatched bass eggs on a mat in tanks with running water. If this method is used it is probably desirable to use a porous spawning substrate such as Spanish moss and to elevate the mat at least 10 cm off the bottom of the pond, tank or raceway (F. Leteux, personal communication).

The eggs can be washed from the nylon mat and incubated in Downing type hatching jars (Chastain and Snow, 1966) or a Heath Vertical Incubator (Snow, 1973). An 8 1/min flush is required. Snow (1973) obtained 2 714 000 eggs from 563 brood fish in seven 0.04 ha brood ponds. Approximately 22 percent of the eggs were not fertilized, but total hatching success was 58 percent.

If a Heath Incubator is used, a fine mesh screen is necessary. A standard tray will hold approximately 50 000 eggs. The eggs should be washed and cleaned of debris before being placed in the incubator. They can be enumerated by the settled volume method. Snow (1973) found 1 ml (settled volume) equaled 281 eggs. If the eggs are to be removed, the spawning mats should be checked each morning. If eggs are too old when separated, the stress of removal causes premature hatching. At a water temperature of  $19^{\circ}$ C the mats should be moved on the second day, at  $19-22^{\circ}$ C the day following observation, and at temperatures above  $23^{\circ}$ C the afternoon of the day observed. The mats should be moved in a tub of water (Snow, 1973).

Fry should be stocked in nursery ponds at 100 000-200 000/ha. Snow (1970) has found that enumeration by the pan comparison method is 90 percent accurate.

D. Regardless of the culture method used, after the fish reach 30-40 mm in the nursery ponds they are seined, graded, treated for disease and transferred to tanks or raceways to be trained to accept artificial food (non-living). Very poor survival (usually less than 10 percent) is attained when one attempts to train 10-25 mm bass to accept artificial food (Snow, 1960). Apparently a moist pellet is required. One of the best commercially prepared feeds for training bass is the Oregon Moist Pellet (OMP) (Snow, 1968a; Hublou, 1963). However, this type of pellet must be stored frozen. Bass can be trained to feed on ground fish, beef liver, etc., or a mixture of ground fish and artificial food. Care must be taken to prevent thaimine deficiency (Snow, 1965).

In order to train bass they must be concentrated. Snow (1975) recommends training for 10-14 days in tanks stocked at 0.07-0.18 kg/ 28.3 l. However, Flickinger and Langlois (1975) have trained at densities of 1.36 kg/ 28.3 l with 91 percent of the bass learning to accept the food. Typically within 14 days 65-75 percent of the bass will learn to take the artificial feed.

| XLII  |
|-------|
| TABLE |

Production of fingerling largemouth bass on artificial feed in rearing ponds stocked with 38-51 mm bass

| والمحافظة   |  |                                      |   |                      |                      |                                |                    |                 |                 |
|---|--|--------------------------------------|---|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Hatchery  | Pond area<br>(ha)  | Number<br>pondș                      | Number<br>stocked/ha  | Recovery<br>%        | Production<br>kg/ha  | Numbe $\mathbf{r}/\mathrm{kg}$ | Food<br>conversion | Days<br>stocked | Reference       |
| Marion, ALa/  | 0.03-0.28  | ω                                    | 32 300-75 300   | avg. 75<br>(58-93)   | 1 223-2 661          | 13.9-22.7                      | 2.50-3.67          | 100             | Snow (1971b)    |
| Marion, AL <sup>D</sup> /   | 0°04   | 20                                   | 27 400-73 900   | avg. 78<br>(53-98)   | 2 107 <b>-</b> 4 990 | avg. 11.1<br>(6.4-19.6)        | 1.43–1.85          | 100             | (as above)      |
| Marion, AL <sup>C/</sup>  | 0.04-0.44  | 14                                   | 26 800-66 700   | avg. 80<br>(55-112)  | 2 230-8 011          | avg. 9.4<br>(7.0-12.1)         | 1.13-1;59          | 100             | (as above)      |
| Marion, AL <sup>d</sup>   | 0.04-0.20  | 10                                   | 12 400-53 800   | avg. 56<br>(39-87)   | 925-2 564            | avg. 13.2<br>(7.3-18.3)        | 3.7-5.7            | 81–97           | Snow (1968b)    |
| Inks Dam, TX <sup>C/</sup>  | 0.10-0.36  | ć                                    | 22 200-48 300   | 74–84                | 3 227 <b>-</b> 6 339 | · 5 <b>.1–</b> 6.4             | avg. 1.22          | 148             | McCraren (1974) |
| Ft. Worth, TX <sup>C/</sup>   | 0.20-0.26  | ć                                    | 20 200-39.500   | 40-75                | 1 508-5 880          | 5.1-5.3                        | avg. 1.37          | 130             | (as above)      |
| Tishomingo, OK <sup>C/</sup>  | 0.32   | 2                                    | 15 400-30 900   | 52-55                | 560-894              | 14.3–18.9                      | avg. 3.57          | 99–150          | (as above)      |
| <ul> <li>Ped ground fish mixed with trout food (</li> <li>Ped OMP - Oregon Moist Pellet (Hublou,</li> <li>Ped OMP + floating trout feed</li> <li>Ped mixture of 10% trout feed + 10% bee</li> </ul> | h mixed with<br>on Moist Pell<br>ting trout fe<br>10% trout fe | trout for<br>let (Hubl.<br>sed + 10% | Fed ground fish mixed with trout food (50/50 or 60/40)<br>Fed OMP - Oregon Moist Pellet (Hublou, 1963)<br>Fed OMP + floating trout feed<br>Fed mixture of 10% trout feed + 10% beef liver + 80% ground fish | 40)<br>6. ground fis | ų                    |                                |                    |                 |                 |

# TABLE XLIII

Treatments for control of various parasites of bass under hatchery conditions. (Except where footnoted these are recommendations by the author cited and no experimental data were presented)

| Parasite or disease  | Chemical                                      | Treatment  | Reference                             |
|--|---|--|---------------------------------------|
| Haemorrhagic septicemia  | Oxytetracycline                               | Inject 50-75 mg active/kg<br>bass                            | Snow (1970)                           |
| Prophylactic   | (as above)                                    | In food 3 g/45 kg fish/day<br>for 7-10 days before<br>moving | Snow (1971a)<br>McCraren (1974)       |
| (as above)   | Acriflavine                                   | 2 ppm when transporting                                      | Snow (1971b)                          |
| Prophylactic for fungus  | (as above)                                    | Bass eggs 50 ppm for<br>15 min                               | Snow (1973)                           |
| (as above)   | Phridylmercuric<br>actetate                   | Bass fry 2 ppm for 1 h                                       | Snow (1961)                           |
| (as above)   | Formalin                                      | Bass fry 1:4 000 for 1 h                                     | (as above)                            |
| (as above)   | Potassium<br>permanganate                     | Bass fry 10 ppm for<br>30-60 min                             | (as above)                            |
| (as above)   | Simazine                                      | 11.2 kg/ha preflooded spawning pool                          | Snow (1975)                           |
| Trichodina   | Formalin                                      | In pond 25 ppm   | Snow (1973)                           |
| Flexibacter  | Acriflavine                                   | 5 ppm 4 h or 2 ppm<br>continuous                             | Snow (1970)                           |
| (as above)   | Sodium chloride                               | 1% for 5-6 h   | Nelson, Bowker and<br>Robinson (1974) |
| (as above)   | Combiotic                                     | 8 ppm 24 h   | (as above)                            |
| (as above)   | Copper sulfate                                | 1-2 ppm for 1 h  | (as above)                            |
| Bacteria   | Potassium<br>permanganate                     | 2 ppm in pond  | McCraren (1974)                       |
| (as above)   | Copper sulfate                                | 0.5 ppm in pond  | (as above)                            |
| External protozoa or<br>fungi  | Sodium chloride                               | 1% for 6 h   | Nelson, Bowker and<br>Robinson (1974) |
| Proteocephalus<br>ambloplitis  | Kamla   | 200 mg/0.45 kg for<br>3 days orally                          | Snow (1970)                           |
| Corallobothrium or<br>Alloglossidium                                 | Di-n-butyl                                    | 150 mg/kg for 7 days<br>orally                               | Allison (1957)                        |
| Tadpole shrimp <u>Apus</u><br>fairy shrimp<br><u>Streptocephalus</u> | Dylox   | 0.25 ppm in pond   | Hornbeck, White and<br>Meyer (1966)   |
| Aeromonas  | Acriflavine                                   | Bass eggs 500-700 ppm for<br>15 min                          | Wright and Snow (1975)                |
| (as above)   | Betadine (150 ppm<br>active I <sub>2</sub> )  | Bass eggs 100 ppm for<br>15 min                              | (as above)                            |
| (as above)   | Wescodyne (150<br>ppm active I <sub>2</sub> ) | Bass eggs 100 ppm for<br>15 min                              | (as above)                            |
| (as above)   | Merthiolate                                   | Bass eggs 750 ppm for<br>15 min                              | (as above)                            |

Feeding is initiated the day after the fish are stocked in the training tank. A 16-24 mm pellet is fed at 1-2 h intervals during the daylight hours. The daily ration should be about 15 percent of body weight of the fish. Cannibalism is not a problem at this time but the effect of attempted cannibalism needs further investigation. Nelson, Bowker and Robinson (1974) noted increased training success with water temperatures near 26°C (76 percent) against lower temperatures (30 percent). Waste material must be siphoned from the bottom of the training tank daily, and sufficient freshwater flush must be used to maintain good water quality.

E. The trained fish can be stocked in raceways, tanks, cages or ponds. Snow (1965) raised bass in troughs at densities of 645g/28.31. This was equivalent to 113 g/l/min flush with a turnover rate of 3-7 h. Nelson, Bowker and Robinson (1974) maintained bass at 336 g/28.3 1 with a 28 l/min flush and a turnover rate of 48 min. The fish were graded to reduce cannibalism, survival was 33 percent.

Snow and Wright (1975) stocked 302-404 fish (11.5 cm, 15 g) in 0.66 m<sup>3</sup> cages having a mesh size of either 0.64 cm or 1.27 cm. These fish were fed on OMP for 2 months. Survival was 98-99 percent with food con-versions of 1.46-2.41. The maximum loading was 39 kg/cage. Growth was similar to bass stocked in open ponds at 50 000/ha.

The procedure which has been best evaluated is to stock the trained bass in ponds at 25 000-50 000/ha (Table XLII). Since food is supplied, production often exceeds 2 000 kg/ha. The fish are fed at 15 percent of body weight for several weeks, after which the rate is dropped to 5 percent for one month followed by a 3 percent rate. Pellet size should be increased as the fish grow. Oxygen depletion frequently occurs when feeding rates exceed 20 kg/ha (Snow, 1971). In fish larger than 27 cm food conversion is typically in the order of 3.0 (Snow, 1975; Lewis, Heidinger and Konikoff, 1969).

#### 7.6 Disease and parasite control

A number of chemicals and procedures for treatment are recommended in the literature (Table XLIII), but there are few studies which give both qualitative and quantitative data.

#### 7.7 Harvest

Fry are harvested with a fine mesh seine or a fry trap. Hayford (1948), Severson.(1963) and Snow (1970) described fry trap designs and use. In general, the bass tend to swim around the spawning pond in a school. Guides made of screen, glass, or plexiglass divert the bass into the V-shaped trap entrance. The trap may have an opening at both ends. A flow of water through the trap enhances its effectiveness. The trap may also be used by directing the flow of water through it, in which case the fish are concentrated and directed into the trap as a result of their response to the flowing water.

Largemouth bass fingerlings are harvested with a seine.

# 7.8 Transport

Bass should be held for 24 h after harvesting before being transported. It is preferable to transfer bass at water temperatures of  $15^{\circ}$ C or less. Snow (1970) recommends hauling densities of 0.06-0.12 kg/l of water. McCraren (1974) has transported bass at 0.25 kg/l of water for up to 11 h. 8 REFERENCES

- Addison, J.H. and S.L. Spencer, Preliminary evaluation of three strains of largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus</u> 1972 <u>salmoides</u> (Lacepède), stocked in ponds in south Alabama. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.</u> <u>Game Fish Comm.</u>, 25(1971):366-74
- Agassiz, L., Notice of a collection of fishes from the southern bend of the Tennessee River, Alabama. 1854 <u>Am.J.Sci.Arts</u>, 17(2):297-369
- Aggus, L.R. and G.V. Elliott, Effects of cover and food on year-class strength of largemouth bass. 1975 <u>In</u> Black bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp.317-22
- Allan, R.C. and J. Romero, Underwater observations of largemouth bass spawning and survival in 1975 Lake Mead. <u>In</u> Black bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 104-12
- Allen, E.R. and W.T. Neil, A xanthic largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus</u>) from Florida. <u>Copeia</u>, 1953(2):116-7 1953
- Allison, L.N., Horse liver as the causative factor in white blindness of hatchery brook trout. 1951 <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 80(1950):140-7
- Allison, R., A preliminary note on the use of Di-N-butyl tin oxide to remove tapeworms from fish. 1957 <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 19(3):128-30
- Allison, R. and H.D. Kelly, An-epizootic of <u>Ichthyophthirius</u> <u>multifilis</u> in a river fish population. 1963 <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 25(3):2
- Al-Saadi, Abdul-Amir M., The micro and gross osteology of the largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides</u> 1962 (Lacepède), with special reference to the non-cellular bone. Ph.D. Thesis, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 131 p.
- Anderson, R.O., Influence of mortality rate on production and potential sustained harvest of largemouth 1974 bass populations. <u>In</u> Symposium on overharvest and management of largemouth bass in small impoundments. Spec.Publ.Am.Fish.Soc.North Cent.<u>Div.</u>, (3):18-28

Factors incluencing the quality of largemouth bass fishing. <u>In</u> Black bass biology and 1975 management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 183-94

- Applegate, R.L., Pyloric caeca counts as a method for separating the advanced fry and fingerlings of 1966 largemouth bass and spotted basses. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 95(2):226
- Arnold, Jr. and Major Isaac, Successful propagation of black bass. <u>Bull.U.S.Fish Comm.</u>, (2):113-5 1882
- Badenhuizen, T.R., Effect of incubation temperature on mortality of embryos of the largemouth bass, 1969 Micropterus salmoides (Lacepède). M.S Thesis, Cornell University, Ithaca, 88 p.
- Bailey, R.M. and C.L. Hubbs, The black basses (<u>Micropterus</u>) of Florida, with description of a new 1949 species. Occas.Pap.Univ.Mich.Mus.Zool., (516):43 p.
- Baird, S.F. and C. Girard, Description of new species of fishes collected in Texas, New Mexico and 1854 Sonora, by Mr. John H. Clark, on the U.S. and Mexican Boundary Survey, and in Texas, by Capt. Van Vliet, U.S.A. <u>Proc.Acad.Nat.Sci.Philad.</u>, (7):24-9
- Baker, W.D., A study of the chromosome numbers of some centrarchid fishes. M.S. Thesis, North 1956 Carolina State College, Raleigh, 42 p.
- Ball, R.C., Farm pond management in Michigan. J.Wildl.Manage., 16(3):266-9 1952
- Ball, R.C. and J.R. Ford, Production of foodfish and minnows in Michigan ponds. <u>Q.Bull.Mich.Agric.</u> 1953 <u>Exp.Stn.</u>, 35(3):384-91

- Ball, R.C. and H.D. Tait, Production of bass and bluegills in Michigan ponds. <u>Tech.Bull.Mich.State</u> 1952 <u>Coll.Agric.Exp.Stn.</u>, (231):24 p.
- Bangham, R.V., Life history of the bass cestoda (Proteocephalus ambloplitis). Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 1927 (57):206-8
- Barry, J.J., Evaluation of creel census, rotenone embayment, gill net, traps and electrofishing gear 1967 samples, by complete drainage of Lenape and Bischoff reservoirs. Indiana Department of Natural Resources Division of Fish Game, Fisheries Research Section, 18 p.
- Bartholomew, J.P., Stream and lake improvement: Evaluation of cover retention as related to angling 1972 quality in Lake McClure (New Exchequer Reservoir), Maripose County, California. California Department of Fish and Game, (F-004-D-18/SP):9 p.
- Beamish, F.W.H., Oxygen consumption of largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u>, in relation to swimming 1970 speed and temperature. <u>Can.J.Zool.</u>, 48(6):1221-8
- , Ration, size and digestion in largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus</u> salmoides Lacepède. <u>Can.J.</u> 1972 <u>Zool.</u>, 50(2):153-64
- Becker, C.D. and W.D. Brunson, The bass tapeworm: a problem in northwest trout management. <u>Prog.</u> 1968 <u>Fish-Cult.</u>, 30(2):76-83
- Becker, D.A., R.G. Heard and P.D. Homes, A preimpoundment survey of the helminth and copepod parasites 1966 of <u>Micropterus</u> spp. of Beaver Reservoir in northwest Arkansas. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 95(1):23-34
- Beckman, W.C., The rate of growth and sex ratio for seven Michigan fishes. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1949 76(1946):63-81
- Bennett, C.D. and B.E. Brown, A comparison of fish population sampling techniques on Lake Raymond Gary, 1969 Oklahoma. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 22(1968):425-44
- Bennett, D.H. and J.W. Gibbons, Reproduction cycles of largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>) in a 1975 cooling reservoir. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 104(1):77-82
- Bennett, G.W., The bass-bluegill combination in a small, artificial lake. <u>Bull.Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv.</u>, 1948 (24):377-412
- , Largemouth bass in Ridge Lake, Coles County, Illinois. <u>Bull.Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv.</u>, 1954 (26):219-76
- , Management of artificial lakes and ponds. New York, Reinhold Publishing Corporation, 1962 283 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, Management of lakes and ponds. New York, Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., 375 p.
- Bennett, G.W. and L. Durham, Cost of bass fishing at Ridge Lake, Coles County, Illinois. <u>Biol.Notes</u> 1951 <u>Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv.</u>, (23):16 p.
- Bennett, G.W., H.W. Adkins and W.F. Childers, Largemouth bass and other fishes in Ridge Lake, 1969 Illinois, 1941-1963. <u>Bull.Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv.</u>, 30(1):1-67
- Benson, N.G., Fish management on Wood's Reservoir. J.Tenn.Acad.Sci., 34(3):172-89 1959
- Berg, L.S., Classification of fishes both recent and fossil. Ann Arbor, Michigan, J.W. Edwards, 1947 517 p.
- Berger, B.L., R.E. Lennon and J.W. Hogan, Laboratory studies on antimycin as a fish toxicant. 1969 <u>Invest.Fish Control U.S.Bur.Sport Fish.Wildl.</u>, (26):21 p.
- Beverton, R.J.H. and S.J. Holt., On the dynamics of exploited fish populations. <u>Fish.Invest.Minist.</u> 1957 <u>Agric.Fish Food, G.B.</u>, (2)(19):533 p.

- Bishop, H., Largemouth bass culture in the southwest. In Proceedings of the North Central warmwater 1968 fish culture workshop. Ames, Iowa, p. 24-7
- Blondin, G.A. et al., The biosynthesis of squalene and sterols in fish. <u>Comp.Biochem.Physiol.</u>, 1966 17(2):391-407
- Bond, C., Fish management problems of Lake of the Woods, Oregon. M.S. Thesis, Oregon State College, 1948 Corvallis, 107 p.
- Bond, C. et al., Determination of fish species and management practices best suited to farm ponds in 1958 Oregon. <u>Progr.Rep.Oregon Agric.Exp.Stn.Proj.</u>, (294):27 p.
- Bonn, E.W., Experimental collecting techniques. Texas Parks and Wildlife Department, (F-008-R-13/wkpl 1967 E/Job 03):27 p.
- Bottroff, L.J., Intergradation of Florida bass in San Diego County. M.S. Thesis, San Diego State 1967 College, San Diego, 131 p.
- Bouck, G.R. and R.C. Ball, Influence of a diurnal oxygen pulse on fish serum proteins. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.</u> 1965 <u>Soc.</u>, 94(4): 363-70
- , Distribution of low mobility proteins in the blood of fishes. J.Fish.Res.Board Can., 1967 24(3):695-7
- Branson, B.A. and G.A. Moore, The lateralis components of the acoustico-lateralis system in the 1962 sunfish family Centrarchidae. <u>Copeia</u>, 1962(1):1-104
- Brauhn, J.L. and R.N. Ray, Bacteria associated with redear sunfish mortality. Prog.Fish-Cult., 1970 32(2):80
- Brauhn, J.L., D. Holz and R.O. Anderson, August spawning of largemouth bass. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 1972. 34(4):207-9
- Breder, C.M., Jr., The reproductive habits of the North American sunfishes (family Centrarchidae). 1936 <u>Zoologica</u>, (21):1-48
- Bridges, W.R., Sodium cyanide as a fish poison. <u>Spec.Sci.Rep.USFWS</u>, (253):11 p. 1958
- Bross, M.G., Fish samples and year-class strength (1965-1967) from Canton Reservoir, Oklahoma. Proc. 1967 Okla.Acad.Sci., (48):194-9
- Brown, B.E. and N.A. Thoreson, Ranch fish ponds in Montana. J.Wildl.Manage., 16(3):275-8 1952
- Brown, C.J.D. and R.C. Ball, A fish population study of Third Sister Lake. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1943 (72):177-86
- Brown, F.A., Jr., Responses of the largemouth black bass to colors. <u>Bull.Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv.</u>, 1937 (21):33-55
- Brown, W.H., Results of stocking largemouth black bass and channel catfish in experimental Texas 1951 farm ponds. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 80(1950):210-7
- Bryan, C.F., Variation in selected meristic characters of some basses, <u>Micropterus</u>. <u>Copeia</u>, 1969 1969 (2):370-3
- Bryant, H.E. and A. Houser, Population estimates and growth of largemouth bass in Beaver and Bull Shoals 1971 reservoirs. <u>Spec.Publ.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (8): 349-57
- Buchanan, J.P., A meristic and morphometric comparison of Arkansas largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus</u> 1968 <u>salmoides salmoides</u> (Lacepède), and the Florida subspecies, <u>Micropterus salmoides floridanus</u> (LeSueur). M.S. Thesis, University of Arkansas, Fayetteville, 45 p.

- Buck, D.H., Effects of turbidity on fish and fishing. <u>Trans.North Am.Wildl.Conf.</u>, (21):249-61 1956
- Buck, D.H. and F. Cross, Early limnological and fish population condition of Canton Reservoir,
   1952 Oklahoma, and fishery management recommendations. Report to Oklahoma Fish and Game Council.
   Research Foundation, Oklahoma A&M College, 110 p.
- Buck, D.H. and C.F. Thoits, Dynamics on one-species populations of fishes in ponds subjected to 1970 cropping and additional stocking. <u>Bull.Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv.</u>, (30):69-162
- Burress, R.M., Enhancing bass production by the use of fish toxicants. <u>In</u> Black bass biology and 1975 management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, p. 480-8
- Byrd, I.B. and D.D. Moss, The production and management of Alabama's state-owned public fishing lakes. 1957 <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 85(1955):208-16
- Cady, E.R., Fish distribution, Norris Reservoir, Tennessee, 1943. 1. Depth distribution of fish in 1945 Norris Reservoir. J.Tenn.Acad.Sci., 20(1):103-14
- Caldwell, D. <u>et al.</u>, Populations of spotted sunfish and Florida largemouth bass in a constant-1957 temperature spring. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 85(1955):120-34
- Carlander, K.D., The standing crop of fish in lakes. J.Fish.Res.Board Can., (12):543-70 1955
- , Some experiments in changing population balance in farm ponds. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 1957 19(2):92-4
- Carlander, K.D. and R.B. Moorman, Standing crops of fish in Iowa ponds. <u>Proc.Iowa Acad.Sci.</u>, 1956 (63):659-68
- Carlson, A.R., Induced spawning of largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u>). <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1973 102(2):442-4
- Carlson, C.A. and M.H. Schealy, Marking larval bass with radio-strontium. J.Fish.Res.Board Can., 1972 29(4):455-8
- Carr, M.H., The breeding habits, embryology, and larval development of the largemouthed black bass 1942 in Florida. Proc.New England Zool.Club, (20):43-77
- Carter, B.T., Growth of three centrarchids in Lake Cumberland, Kentucky. <u>Ky.Fish.Bull.</u>, (44):31 p. 1967
- Chastain, G.A. and J.R. Snow, Nylon mats as spawning sites for largemouth bass <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u> 1966 Lacepède. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 19(1965):405-8
- Chatfield, R., Proximate composition of American food materials. <u>Circ.U.S.Dep.Agric.</u>, (549) 1940
- Chew, R.L., Early life history of the Florida largemouth bass. Fish.Bull.Fla.Game Fresh Water Fish 1974 Comm., (7):76 p.
- Childers, W.F., Hybrid sunfish studies. <u>In</u> Water resources research catalogue, Vol. 4. Washington, 1968 D.C., U.S. Department of the Interior, Office of Water Resources Research, Item 6.0195

, Bass genetics as applied to culture and management. In Black bass biology and 1975 management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 362-72

- Childers, W.F. and G.W. Bennett, Hook-and-line yield of largemouth bass and redear x green sunfish 1967 hybrids in a one-acre pond. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 29(1):27-35
- Childers, W.F. and G. Whitt, Isozyme differences in largemouth bass subspecies. <u>Proc.Midwest Fish</u> 1974 Wildl.Conf., (36) (Abstr.)

- Choate, J.L., Effects of size limit regulation on largemouth bass in an impoundment. M.A. Thesis, 1970 University of Missouri, Columbia, 56 p.
- Clark, C.F., A study of the loss of fish from an artificial lake over a wasteweir, Lake Loramie, 1942 Ohio. <u>Proc.North Am.Wildl.Conf.</u>, (7):250-6
- , Bluegill control experiment in Hamler Lake, Ohio. <u>Publ.Ohio Dep.Nat.Resour.Div.Wildl.</u>, 1964 (W-335):5 p.
- Clark, M., Bass production in a Kentucky fish hatchery pond. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 12(1):33-4 1950
- Clausen, R., Fish metabolism under increasing temperature. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (63):215-7 1933

\_\_\_\_\_, Oxygen consumption in fresh water fishes. Ecology, (17):216-26

Clugston, J.P., Growth of the Florida largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides floridanus</u> (LeSueur), 1964 and the northern largemouth bass, <u>M. s. salmoides</u> (Lacepede), in subtropical Florida. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 93(2):146-54

\_\_\_\_\_, Centrarchid spawning in the Florida Everglades. <u>Q.J.Fla.Acad.Sci.</u>, 29(2):137-43

- Cooper, E.L., H. Hidu and J.K. Anderson, Growth and production of largemouth bass in small ponds. 1963 Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 92(4):391-400
- Cooper, E.L., C. Wagner and G. Krantz, Bluegills dominate production in a mixed population of fishes. 1971 Ecology, 52(2):280-90
- Cooper, G.P. and W.C. Latta, Further studies on the fish population and exploitation by angling in 1954 Sugarloaf Lake, Washtenaw County, Michigan. <u>Pap.Mich.Acad.Sci.Arts\_Lett.</u>, (39):209-23
- Cooper, G.P. and R.N. Schafer, Studies of the population of legal-size fish in Whitmore Lake, 1954 Washtenaw and Livingston Counties, Michigan. Trans.North Am.<u>Wildl.Conf.</u>, (19):239-58
- Cottiglia, M., La distribuzione della ittiofauna dulciacquicola in Sardegna. <u>Riv.Idrobiol.</u>, 1968 (7):63-113
- Crance, J. and L.G. McBay, Results of tests with channel catfish in Alabama ponds. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 1966 28(4):193-200
- Cross, F.B., Early limnological and fish population conditions of Canton Reservoir, Oklahoma with 1951 special reference to carp, channel catfish, largemouth bass, green sunfish, and bluegill, and fishery management recommendations. Ph.D. Thesis, Oklahoma Agricultural and Technical College, Stillwater, 92 p.
- Crumpton, J.E. and R.L. Wilbur, Florida's fish attractor program. <u>In</u> Proceedings of an international 1974 conference on artificial reefs, Laura Colunga College Station, p. 39-46
- Cummings, J.S., Diurnal variation in motor activity of largemouth black bass, <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u> 1968 (Lacepède). Ph.D. Thesis, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois, 53 p.
- Cuvier, G. and M. Valenciennes, Histoire naturelle des poissons. Paris, Levrault, Vol. 2:490/p. 1828

, Histoire naturelle des poissons. Paris, Levrault, Vol. 3:500 p.

Davidson, G., L. Posey and C. Hoenke, An evaluation of yo-yo fishing. Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast. 1968 Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 21(1967):382-91

- Davis, J.T. and J.S. Hughes, Effects of standing timber on fish populations and fisherman success in 1971 Bussey Lake, Louisiana. <u>Spec.Publ.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (8):255-64
- Dean, J.M. and C.J. Goodnight, A comparative study of carbohydrate metabolism in fish as affected by 1964 temperature and exercise. <u>Physiol.Zool.</u>, (37):280-99
- Dendy, J.S., Further studies on depth distribution of fish, Norris Reservoir, Tennessee. <u>J.Tenn.</u> 1946 <u>Acad.Sci.</u>, 21(1):94-104
- Denyes, H.A. and J.M. Joseph, Relationship between temperature and blood oxygen in the largemouth bass. 1956 J.Wildl.Manage., 20(1):56-64
- Dequine, J.F. and C.E. Hall, Jr., Results of some tagging studies of the Florida largemouth bass 1950 <u>Micropterus salmoides floridanus</u> (LeSueur). <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 79(1949):155-66
- DeRyke, W., Fish foods in relation to fish culture. <u>Proc.Iowa Acad.Sci.</u>, (30):163-6 1923
- Dietz, E.M.C. and K.C. Jurgens, An evaluation of selective shad control at Medina Lake, Texas. 1963 Texas Parks Wildlife Department (1F Rep.5):1-32
- Dillard, J.G. and G. Novinger, Stocking largemouth bass in small impoundments. <u>In</u> Black bass biology 1975 and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 459-74
- Driscoll, D.P., Sexing the largemouth bass with an otoscope. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 31(3):183-4 1969
- Dubets, H., Feeding habits of the largemouth bass as revealed by a gastroscope. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 1954 (16):134-6
- Dudley, R.G., Survival of largemouth bass embryos at low dissolved oxygen concentrations. M.S. Thesis, 1969 Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, 61 p.
- Dudley, R.G. and A.W. Eipper, Survival of largemouth bass embryos at low dissolved oxygen concentrations. 1975 Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 104(1):122-8
- Dukes, G.H., R.M. Shealy and W.A. Rogers, <u>Sebekia oxycephala</u> (Pentastomida) in largemouth bass from 1971 Lake St. John, Concordia Parish, Louisiana. <u>J.Parasitol.</u>, 5(5):1028
- Eaton, T.H., Notes on the olfactory organs in Centrarchidae. <u>Copeia</u>, 1956(3):196-9 1956
- Eckblad, J.W. and M.G. Shealy, Jr., Predation on largemouth bass embryos by the pond snail <u>Viviparus</u> 1972 <u>georgianus</u>. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 101(4):734-8
- Eddy, S. and T. Surber, Northern fishes with special reference to the Upper Mississippi Valley. 1947 University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis, Minnesota, 276 p.
- Edwards, J.L. and J.D. Higgins, The effects of electric currents on fish. Atlanta, Georgia Institute 1973 of Technology, Engineering Experimental Station, Final report, Projects B-397, B-400 and E-200-301, 75 p.
- Eipper, A.W. and J.L. Forney, Evaluation of partial fin clips for marking largemouth bass, walleyes 1965 and rainbow trout. N.Y.Fish Game J., 12(2):233-40
- Elder, D.E., Reproduction of fish subjected to electric current. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 16(3):130 1954
- Elder, D.E. and W.M. Lewis, An investigation and comparison of the fish populations of two farm ponds. 1955 <u>Am.Midl.Nat.</u>, 53(2):390-5
- Elkin, R.E., An estimate of the fish population of a 16 acre lake based on recovery during draining. 1955 Proc.Okla.Acad.Sci., (36):53-9

- Elrod, J.H., Dynamics of fishes in an Alabama pond subjected to intensive angling. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1971 100(4):757-68
- Elser, H.J., Escape of fish over spillways: Maryland, 1958-1960. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game</u> 1961 <u>Fish Comm.</u>, 14(1960):174-85
- Emig, J.W., Largemouth bass. <u>In</u> Inland fisheries management, edited by A. Calhoun. Sacramento, 1966 California Department of Fish and Game, pp. 332-53
- Erdman, D.S., Inland game fishes of Puerto Rico. San Juan, Department of Agriculture, 96 p. 1972
- Eschmeyer, R.W., Growth of fishes in Norris Lake, Tennessee. <u>J.Tenn.Acad.Sci.</u>, 15(3):329-41 1940

- Eschmeyer, R.W. and A.M. Jones, The growth of game fishes in Norris Reservoir during the first five 1941 years of impoundment. <u>Trans.North\_Am.Wildl.Conf.</u>, (6):222-40
- Evans, I.M., Rates of growth of game and pan fishes in Ohio, their practical interpretation and some 1948 technical problems involved. Ohio Conservation Commission (mimeo)
- Farabee, G.B., Factors influencing the vulnerability of largemouth bass to angling and the comparative 1970 learning ability of selected fishes. M.S. Thesis, University of Missouri, Columbia, 35 p.
- Fast, A.W., Stream and lake improvement: Fisheries management of El Capitán Reservoir, San Diego 1965 County, California, 1960-1962. Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game (F-004-D-11/SP):29 p.
- Fellman, W., Der Forellenbarsch. <u>Allg.Fisch.Ztg.</u>, (55):80 1930
- Ferguson, R.G., The preferred temperature of fish and their midsummer distribution in temperate lakes 1958 and streams. J.Fish.Res.Board Can., 14(4):607-24
- Fetterolf, C. de la Mesa, Jr., A population study of the fishes of Wintergreen Lake, Kalamazoo County, 1952 Michigan. With notes on movement and effect of netting on condition. M.S. Thesis, Michigan State College, 127 p.
- Fieldhouse, R.D., Results of stocking largemouth bass in Nassau Lake. <u>N.Y.Fish Game J.</u>, 18(1):68-9 1971
- Flickinger, S.A. and D.L. Langlois, Feeding artificial diets to smallmouth bass and to largemouth 1976 bass. Presented at the American Fisheries Society, National Fish Culture Workshop, Springfield, Missouri, 12 p. (mimeo)
- Follis, B.J., Fish stocking evaluation. Texas Parks Wildlife Department, (F-005-R-19/Job 14):8 p. 1972
- Fore, P.L., Responses of freshwater fishes to artificial light. Ph.D. Thesis, Southern Illinois 1969 University, Carbondale, 86 p.
- Fowler, H.W., Studies of Hong Kong fishes. <u>Hong Kong Nat.</u>, Suppl. (6):23-4 1938
- Fox, A.C., Effects of traditional harvest regulations on bass populations and fishing. In Black 1975 bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 392-8
- Frey, D.G., The fishes of North Carolina's Bay Lakes and their intraspecific variation. <u>J.Elisha</u> 1951 <u>Mitchell Sci.Soc.</u>, 67(1):1-44

<sup>,</sup> The catch, abundance, and migration of game fishes in Norris Reservoir, Tennessee, 1940. 1942 <u>J.Tenn.Acad.Sci.</u>, 17(1):90-115

- Fuhrman, F. et al., The metabolism of the excised brain of the largemouthed bass (<u>Huro salmoides</u>) at 1944 graded temperature levels. <u>Physiol.Zool.</u>, (17):42-50
- Gaines, J.L., Jr., F.J. Ware and W.A. Rogers, A summary of findings on the nematode, <u>Goezia</u> sp. in the 1973 southeasterm United States. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game</u> Fish Comm., 26(1972):334-75
- Gammon, J.R. and A.D. Hasler, Predation by introduced muskellunge on perch and bass. 1. Year 1-5. 1965 <u>Trans.Wisc.Acad.Sci.Arts</u> Lett., (54):249-72
- Garlick, T., A treatise on the artificial propagation of certain kinds of fish, with the description 1857 and habits of such kinds as are the most suitable for pisciculture. Cleveland, 142 p.
- Gasaway, C.R., Estimating the costs of sustained stocking of northern Great Plains reservoirs. In 197.1 Proceedings of the North Central Warmwater Fish Culture-Management Workshop, Iowa State University, Ames, pp. 65-83
- Geldern, C.E. von, Abundance and distribution of fingerling largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides</u>, as 1971 determined by electrofishing, at Lake Nacimiento, California. <u>Calif.Fish Game</u>, 57(4):228-45
- Geldern, C.E. von and D.F. Mitchell, Largemouth bass and threadfin shad in California. <u>In</u> Black bass 1975 biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp.436-49
- Gibbons, J.W., J.T. Hook and D.L. Forney, Winter responses of largemouth bass to heated effluent from 1972 a nuclear reactor. Prog.Fish-Cult., 34(2):88-90
- Glass, N.R., The effect of time of food deprivation on the routine oxygen consumption of largemouth 1968 black bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>). Ecology, 49(2):340-3
- Goodyear, C.P., A simple technique for detecting effects of toxicants or other stresses on predatory-1972 prey interaction. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 11(2):367-70
- Goodyear, C.P. and C.E. Boyd, Elemental composition of largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>). 1972 Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 101(3):545-7
- Graham, L.K., Effects of four harvest rates on pond fish populations. <u>Publ.Am.Fish.Soc.Northcent.Div.</u>, 1974 (3):29-38
- Grinstead, B.G. and R. Gomez, Catch of commercial and game fish with four-foot trap nets of various 1972 mesh sizes. Oklahoma Department of Wildlife Conservation, 13 p.
- Gulish, W.J., Fisheries investigations on Elk Creek Lake. Indiana Division of Fish and Game, 1970 (F-011-R-01/wkpl 03/SP 2):28 p.
- Hackney, P.A., On the theory of fish density. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 36(2):66-71 1974
- , Bass populations in ponds and community lakes. In Black bass biology and management, 1975 edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 131-9
- Hancock, H.M., A study of the movements and capture of some fishes in Fort Gibson Reservoir, Oklahoma. 1956 Trans.Ky.Acad.Sci., 17(2):88-100
- Hansen, D.F. et al., Hook-line catch in fertilized and unfertilized ponds. <u>Bull.Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv.</u>, 1960 27(5):345-90
- Harrison, A.C., Black bass in the Cape Province. Second report on the progress of American largemouth 1936 black bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>, Lacepède). <u>Invest.Rep.Div.Fish.Union South Afr.</u>, (7):119 p.
- Hart, J.S., Geographic variation of some physiological and morphological characteristics in certain 1952 freshwater fish. <u>Univ.Toronto\_Biol.Ser.</u>, (60):79 p.
- Hathaway, E.S., The relation of temperature to the quantity of food consumed by fishes. Ecology, 1927 8(4):428-34

Hayford, R.A., Largemouth bass trap. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 10(2):98-9 1948

- Hayne, D.W., G.E. Hall and H.M. Nichols, An evaluation in Douglas Reservoir, Tennessee. <u>In</u> Reservoir 1967 fish resources symposium. Athens, University of Georgia, PP. 244-97
- Heidinger, R.C., An indexed bibliography of the largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>). Starksville, 1975 Mississippi, Bass Research Foundation, 84 p.

, Life history and biology of the largemouth bass. <u>In</u> Black bass biology and management, 1975 edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp.11-20

- Heman, M.L., R.S. Campbell and L.C. Redmond, Manipulation of fish populations through reservoir draw-1969 down. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 98(2):293-304
- Henley, J.P., Evaluation of rotenone sampling with scuba gear. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game</u> 1967 Fish Comm., 20(1966):439-46.
- Herman, E.F., D.E. Holtman and J. O'Donnell, A doublemouth largemouth bass. <u>Wisc.Conserv.Bull.</u>, 1947 12(10):27-8
- Hester, F.E., The tolerance of eight species of warm-water fishes to certain rotenone formulations. 1960 <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 13(1959):120-33

, Phylogenetic relationships of sunfishes as demonstrated by hybridization. <u>Trans.Am.</u> 1970 <u>Fish.Soc.</u>, 99(1):100-4

- Hill, T.K. and E.W. Shell, Some effects of a sanctuary on an exploited fish population. <u>Trans.Am.</u> 1975 <u>Fish.Soc.</u>, 104(3):441-5
- Hoff, J.G. and J.R. Westman, Experiments with a dibrom-malathion formulation as a selective piscicide. 1965. <u>N.Y.Fish Game J.</u>, 12(1):99-107
- Hoffman, G.L., Parasites of North American freshwater fishes. Los Angeles, University of California 1967 Press, 486 p.
- Hogan, J., Experiments with commercial fertilizers in rearing largemouth bass fingerlings. <u>Trans.</u> 1933 <u>Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (63):110-9
- Holbrook, J.A., Bass fishing tournaments. In Black bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. 1975 Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, PP-408-15
- Holvik, J., Standing crop abundance, production and some ecological aspects of fish populations in 1970 some inland waters of Cuba. <u>Vestn.Cesk.Spol.Zool.</u>, (33):184-201
- Hooper, A.D., Enhancement of bass production by fertilization and feeding. <u>In</u> Black bass biology 1975 and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 506-12
- Hooper, A.D. and J.H. Crance, Use of rotenone in restoring balance to overcrowded fish populations in 1960 Alabama lakes. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 89(4):351-7
- Hooper, G.R., Results of stocking largemouth bass, bluegill, and redear sunfish in ponds less than 1970 0.25 acre. Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 23(1969):474-9
- Hooper, G.R. and W.C. Reeves, Survey of success and owner management of North Alabama ponds one acre 1975 and less in size. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 28(1974):13 p.
- Hornbeck, R., W. White and F.P. Meyer, Control of <u>Apus</u> and fairy shrimp in hatchery rearing ponds. 1966 Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 19(1965):401-3
- Houser, A. and B. Grinstead, The effect of black bullhead catfish and bluegill removals on the fish 1962 population of a small lake. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 15(1961): 193-200

- Houser, A. and W.C. Rainwater, Production of largemouth bass in Beaver Bull Shoals lakes. In Black 1975 bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 310-6
- Hubbs, C.L., A check-list of the fishes of the Great Lakes and tributary waters, with nomenclatorial 1926 notes and analytical keys. <u>Misc.Publ.Mus.Zool.Univ.Mich.</u>, (15):1-77
- Hubbs, C.L. and R.M. Bailey, A revision of the black basses (<u>Micropterus</u> and <u>Huro</u>), with descriptions 1940 of four new forms. <u>Misc.Publ.Mus.Zool.Univ.Mich.</u>, (48):7-51
- Hubbs, C.L. and K.F. Lagler, Guide to the fishes of the Great Lakes and tributary waters. <u>Bull.</u> 1941 <u>Cranbook Inst.Sci.</u>, (18):100 p.
- Hublow, W.F., Oregon pellets. Prog.Fish-Cult., 25(4):175-80 1963
- Huish, M.T., Gizzard shad removal in Deer Island Lake, Florida. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game</u> 1958 <u>Fish Comm.</u>, 11(1957):312-8
- Huish, M.T. and J.B. Copeland, Return rates of strap tags and Petersen tags. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.</u> 1963 <u>Assoc.Game\_Fish Comm.</u>, 16(1962):262-3
- Hulsey, A.H., Effects of a fall and winter drawdown on a flood control lake. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.</u> 1957 <u>Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 10(1956):285-9
- Hundley, L.R., A check on two methods of estimating farm fishpond populations. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 1954 16(4):163-8
- Hunsaker, D. and R.W. Crawford, Preferential spawning behavior of the largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus</u> 1964 <u>salmoides</u>. <u>Copeia</u>, 1964(1):240-1
- Hunt, B.P., Digestion rate and food consumption of Florida gar, warmouth, and largemouth bass. <u>Trans.</u> 1960 <u>Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 89(2):206-11
- Isaac, G.W. and C.E. Bond, Standing crops of fish in Oregon farm ponds. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 92(1):25-9
  1963
- Isom, B.G., Outbreaks of <u>Columnaris</u> in Center Hill and Old Hickory Reservoirs, Tennessee. <u>Prog.Fish-</u> 1960 <u>Cult.</u>, 22(1):43-5
- Jackson, S.W., Summary of three-year creel census on Lake Eucha and Spavinaw Lake, Oklahoma, with 1957 comparisons of other Oklahoma reservoirs. Proc.Okla.Acad.Sci., (38):146-53
  - , Comparison of age and growth of four fishes from Lower and Upper Spavinaw Lakes, 1958 Oklahoma. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 11(1957):232-49
- James, C.C., Floating fish nest. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, (21):19-21 1936
- James, M.F., Histological changes in the gonads of the bluegill, <u>Lepomis macrochirus</u>, Rafinesque, and 1942 of the largemouth bass, <u>Huro salmoides</u> (Lacepède) accompanying season, age and condition. Ph.D. Thesis, University of Illinois, Urbana, 86 p.
  - Hermaphroditism in the largemouth bass. J.Morphol., 79(1):93-5

, Histology of gonadal changes in the bluegill, <u>Lepomis macrochirus</u> Rafinesque, and the 1946b largemouth bass, <u>Huro salmoides</u> (Lacepède). J.Morphol., 79(1):63-92

ikins, R.M., The standing crop of fish in Oklahoma ponds. Proc.Okla.Acad.Sci., (38):157-72
1957

, The influence of some environmental factors on standing crop and harvest of fishes in 1967 U.S. reservoirs. In Reservoir fisheries resources symposium. Athens, University of Georgia, pp. 298-321

- Jenkins, R.M., Reservoir fish management. <u>In</u> A century of fisheries in North America. <u>Spec.Publ.</u> 1970 <u>Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (7):173-82
- , Black bass crops and species associations in reservoirs. <u>In</u> Black bass biology and 1975 management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 114-24
- Jenkins, R.M. and G.E. Hall, Growth of largemouth bass in Oklahoma. <u>Rep.Okla.Fish.Res.Lab.</u>, (30):44 p. 1953
- Jenkins, R.M. and D.I. Morais, Reservoir sport fishing effort and harvest in relation to environmental 1971 variables. <u>Spec.Publ.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (8):371-84
- Jensen, A.L., Predator-prey and competition models with state variables: biomass, number of individuals, 1974 and average individual weight. J.Fish.Res.Board Can., 31(10):1669-74
- Jester, D.B., Variations in catchability of fishes with color of gillnets. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1973 102(1):109-15
- Johnson, J.E., J.N. Rinne and W.L. Mincbley, Selectivity and efficiency of some commercial fishing 1970 devices in central Arizona reservoirs. <u>J.Ariz.Acad.Sci.</u>, (6):46-50
- Johnson, M.G., Limnology of Ontario ponds in relation to winter-kill of largemouth bass. <u>Prog.Fish-</u> 1965 <u>Cult.</u>, 27(4):193-8
- Johnson, M.G. and W.H. Charlton, Some effects of temperature on the metabolism and activity of the 1960 largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides</u> Lacepède. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 22(4):155-63
- Johnson, M.G. and H.R. McCrimmon, Survival, growth, and reproduction of largemouth bass in southern 1967 Ontario ponds. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 29(4):216-21
- Johnston, P.M., The embryonic history of the germ cells of the largemouth black bass, <u>Micropterus</u> 1951 · <u>salmoides</u> (Lacepède). <u>J.Morphol.</u>, (88):471-542

, The embryonic development of the swim bladder of the largemouth black bass <u>Micropterus</u> 1953 salmoides salmoides (Lacepede). J.Morphol., 93(1):45-67

- Jordan, D.S., Notes on certain typical specimens of American fishes in the British Museum and in the 1880 Museum d'Histoire Naturelle at Paris. <u>Proc.U.S.Nat.Mus.</u>, (2):218-26
- Jordan, D.S. and B.W. Evermann, American food and game fishes. New York, Dover Publications Inc., 1969 574 p.
- Jubb, R.A., Freshwater fishes in southern Africa. Cape Town, A.A. Balkema, 248 p. 1967
- Jurgens, K.C. and W.H. Brown, Chilling the eggs of the largemouth bass. Prog.Fish-Cult., 16(4):172-5 1954
- Keast, A., Feeding of some Great Lakes fishes at low temperatures. J.Fish.Res.Board Can., 25(6): 1968 1199-218
- Keith, W.E., Management by water level manipulation. <u>In</u> Black bass biology and management, edited 1975 by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 489-97
- Keith, W.E. and S.W. Barkley, Predation on stocked rainbów trout by chain pickerel and largemouth bass 1971 in Lake Ouachita, Arkansas. Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 24(1970):401-7
- Kelley, H.D. and R. Allison, Observations on the infestation of a freshwater fish population by a 1963 marine copepod (<u>Ergasilus Lizae</u>, Kroyer). <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 16(1962):236-9
- Kelley, J.W., Sexual maturity and fecundity of the largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u> (Lacepède), 1962 in Maine. Trans.Am.Fish.<u>Soc.</u>, 91(1):23-8

, Effects of incubation temperature on survival of largemouth bass eggs. <u>Prog.Fish-</u> 1968 Cult., 30(3):159-63

72

- Kempinger, J.J., Impact of underwater spearfishing on a mixed warmwater fish population. <u>Res.Rep.</u> 1968 <u>Wisc.Dep.Nat.Resour.</u>, (30):10 p.
- , Experimental management of Spruce Lake, a small bog lake in northeastern Wisconsin. <u>Res.</u> 1969 <u>Rep.Wisc.Dep.Nat.Resour.</u>, (40):15 p.
- Kenaga, E.E., TORDON herbicides-evaluation of safety to fish and birds. <u>Down to Earth</u>, 25(1):5-9 1969
- Kimsey, J.B., Largemouth bass tagging. <u>Calif.Fish Game</u>, 42(4):337-46 1956

\_\_\_\_\_, Largemouth bass tagging at Clear Lake, Lake County, California. <u>Calif.Fish Game</u>, 1957 43(2):111-8

- Kimsey, J.B., R.H. Hagy and G.W. McCammon, Progress report on the Mississippi threadfin shad, 1957 <u>Dorosoma petenensis atchafylae</u>, in the Colorado River for 1956. <u>Admin.Rep.Calif.Inland</u> <u>Fish.</u>, (57-23):48 p.
- Kirk, W.L., The nutritional value of bullfrog tadpoles, <u>Rana catesbeiana</u>, as forage for the largemouth 1967 bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides</u>. M.A. Thesis, Southern Illinois University, Carbondale, 29 p.

Kirkland, L., A tagging experiment on spotted and largemouth bass using an electric shocker and the 1963 Petersen disc tag. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 16(1962):424-32

Klavano, W.C., Age and growth of fish from Oregon farm ponds. M.S. Thesis, Oregon State College, 1958 41 p.

- Kostitzin, V.A., Mathematical biology. London, Harrap, 411 p. 1939
- Kramer, R.H. and L.L. Smith, Jr., Utilization of nests of largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides</u>, by 1960a golden shiners, <u>Notemigonus crysoleucas</u>. <u>Copeia</u>, 1960(1):73-4

, Formation of year classes in largemouth bass. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 91(1):29-41

- Krumholz, L.A., A check on the fin clipping methods for estimating fish populations. <u>Pap.Mich.Acad.</u> 1944 <u>Soi.Arts Lett.</u>, 29(1943):281-91
- Krummrich, J.T. and R.C. Heidinger, Vulnerability of channel catfish to largemouth bass predation. 1973 Prog.Fish-Cult., 35(3):173-5
- Lacepède, B.G.E., Histoire naturelle des poissons. Paris, Plassan, Imprimeurlibrire, Vol. 4:728 p. 1802
- Lackey, R.T., J.E. Powers and J.R. Zuboy, Modelling to improve management of bass fisheries. In 1975 Black bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute pp. 430-5
- LaFaunce, D.A., Long-term retention of tags by some freshwater fish. <u>Calif.Fish Game</u>, 51(1):52-3 1965
- LaFaunce, D.A., J.B. Kinsey and H.K. Chadwick, The fishery at Sutherland Reservoir, San Diego County, 1964 California. <u>Calif.Fish Game</u>, 50(4):271-91
- Lagler, K.F. and G.C. DeRoth, Populations and yield to anglers in a fishery for largemouth bass. 1952 Pap.Mich.Acad.Sci.Arts Lett., (38):235-53

Lambou, V.W., Efficiency and selectivity of flag gill nets fished in Lake Bistineau, Louisiana. 1962 Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 15(1961):319-59

<sup>,</sup> First-year growth of the largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u>, and some related 1960b ecological factors. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 89(2):222-33

| Lambou, V | 7.W. | and  | ιH.  | Stern,  | Jr.,  | Preliminar | ry report | on  | the  | effects  | of  | the  | removal | of   | rough | fishes  | on    |
|-----------|------|------|------|---------|-------|------------|-----------|-----|------|----------|-----|------|---------|------|-------|---------|-------|
| 1959      |      | the  | Clea | ar Lake | sport | fishery.   | Proc, Ann | u.C | onf. | Southeas | t.A | ssoc | Game Fi | sh C | omm.  | 12(1958 | 3):   |
|           |      | 36-5 | 6    |         |       |            |           |     |      |          |     |      |         |      | /     | ( ) ) ] | - / · |

- Lamkin, J.B., The spawning habits of the largemouth bass in the south. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 29(1900): 1901 129-55
- Latapie, W.R., Evaluation of various tagging methods on several freshwater fishes and estuarine fishes 1968 of Louisiana. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 21(1967):505-9
- Latta, W.C., Dynamics of bass in large natural lakes. <u>In</u> Black bass biology and management, edited 1975 by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, p. 175-82
- Laurence, G.C., The energy expenditure of largemouth bass larvae, <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u>, during yolk 1969 absorption, <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 98(3):398-405
- 1971a
- \_, Digestion rate of larval largemouth bass. N.Y.Fish Game J., 18(1):52-6
- , Feeding and bioenergetics of largemouth bass larva (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>). Ph.D. Thesis, 1971b Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, 132 p.
  - , Comparative swimming abilities of fed and starved largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>). 1972 J.Fish.Biol., 4(1):73-8
- Lawrence, J.M., Estimated sizes of various forage fishes largemouth bass can swallow. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.</u> 1958 <u>Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, (1957):220-5
- , Further investigations on the use of Delrad as an algaecide in fishponds. <u>Prog.Fish-</u> 1958 <u>Cult.</u>, 20(2):89-91
- Lennon, R.E. et al., Reclamation of ponds, lakes and streams with fish toxicants: a review. FAO 1970 Fish.Tech.Pap., (100):99 p. (Reprinted in 1971 by the U.S. Department of the Interior, Fisheries and Wildlife, Bureau Sport Fisheries and Wildlife)
- LeSueur, C.A., Descriptions of the five new species of the genus <u>Chichla</u> of Cuvier. <u>J.Acad.Nat.Sci.</u> 1822 <u>Phila.</u>, (2):214-21
- Lewis, W.M., Jr., Predation as a factor in fish populations. <u>In</u> Reservoir fisheries resources 1967 symposium. Athens, University of Georgia, pp. 386-90

, Isobornyl thiccyanoacetate as a fish drugging agent and selective toxin. Prog.Fish-Cult., 1968 30(1):29-31

- , Morphological adaptations of cyprinodontoids for inhabiting oxygen deficient waters. 1970 <u>Copeia</u>, 1970(2):319-25
- Lewis, W.M., Jr. and S. Flickinger, Home range tendency of the largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>). 1967 <u>Ecology</u>, 48(6):1020-3
- Lewis, W.M., Jr. and R. Heidinger, Fish stocking combinations for farm ponds. <u>Fish.Bull.South.Ill.</u> 1973 <u>Univ., Carbondale</u>, (4):17 p.
- Lewis, W.M., Jr. and D.R. Helms, Vulnerability of forage organisms to largemouth bass. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.</u> 1964 <u>Soc.</u>, 93(3):315-8
- Lewis, W.M., Jr., R. Heidinger and M. Konikoff, Loss of fishes over the drop box spillway of a lake. 1968 Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 97(4):492-4

\_\_\_\_\_, Artificial feeding of yearling and adult largemouth bass. Prog.Fish-Cult., 31(1):44-6

Lewis, W.M., Jr., R. Summerfelt and M. Bender, Use of an electric shocker in conjunction with the 1962 mark-and-recovery technique in making estimates of largemouth bass populations. <u>Prog.</u> Fish-Cult., (24):41-5

- Lewis, W.M., Jr. <u>et al.</u>, Food choice of largemouth bass as a function of availability and vulnerability 1961 of food items. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 90(3):277-80
  - \_\_\_\_\_, Food intake of the largemouth bass. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 103(2):277-80
- Lincoln, R.P., Bass bug. In The Wise fisherman's encyclopedia, edited by A.J. McClane. New York, 1953 Wm. Wise and Co., pp.63-81
- Lincoln, R.S. and D.W. Smith, The use of antimycin Fintrol-Concentrate to selectively thin panfish 1974 populations in three lower Michigan lakes. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, 11 p.
- Lockard, D.V., N.M. Wood and R.C. Allan, Vulnerability of game fish to spearfishing, Lake Mead. 1971 Nevada Fish and Game Commission, (F-020-R-06/SP1):18 p.
- Logendyke, S., Bait casting. In The Wise fisherman's encyclopedia, edited by A.J. McClane. New York, 1953 Wm. Wise and Co., pp. 87-101
- Lopinot, A.C., Pond fish and fishing in Illinois. <u>Fish.Bull.Ill.Dep.Conserv.</u>, (5):62 p. 1967
  - \_\_\_\_\_, Evaluation of rehabilitated Illinois farm ponds 1959-1967. <u>Spec.Fish.Rep.Ill.Dep.</u> 1970 <u>Conserv.Fish.</u>, (31):49 p.

, Procedures used by the Illinois Department of Conservation in the investigation of 1971 pollution caused fish kills. In Fish kill investigation seminar. Environmental Protection Agency, Federal Water Quality Administration, Cincinnati, Ohio, and Ohio Cooperative Fisheries Unit, Ohio State University, 17 p.

- Lorenzen, W.E. and R.C. Heidinger, America's new competitive sport. <u>Ill.Wildl.</u>, 9(3):13 1973
- Lotka, A.J., Elements of mathematical biology. New York, Dover Publications 1956
- Louder, D.E., Escape of fish over spillways. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 20(1):38-41 1958
- Louder, D.E. and E.G. McCoy, Preliminary investigations of the use of Aqualin for collecting fishes. 1963 <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 16(1962):240-2
- MacKay, H.H., Largemouth black bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>). <u>Sylva Ont.Lands For.Rev.</u>, 16(5):25-31 1960
- Mackenthum, K.M., A preface for the investigation of fish kills. <u>In</u> Investigation of fish kills. 1972 Environmental Protection Agency, Region 6, and Oklahoma State University, Stillwater, pp.4-9
- MacLeod, J.C., A new apparatus for measuring maximum swimming speeds of small fish. J.Fish.Res. 1967 Board Can., 24(6):1241-52
- Maloney, J.E., D.R. Schupp and W.J. Scidmore, Largemouth bass population and harvest, Gladstone Lake, 1962 Crow Wing County, Minnesota. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 91(1):42-52
- Manning, J.H., A study of the populations and growth phenomena of centrarchid fishes in a soft-water 1951 impoundment of Maryland. M.S. Thesis, University of Maryland, College Park, 85 p.
- Marking, L.L., Toxicity of quinaldine to selected fishes. <u>Invest.Fish Control U.S.Bur.Sport Fish.</u> 1969 Wildl., (23):3-10
- Marking, L.L. and J.W. Hogan, Toxicity of Bayer 73 fish. <u>Invest.Fish Control U.S.Bur.Sport Fish.</u> 1967 Wildl., (19):3-13

- Marking, L.L. <u>et al.</u>, Toxicity of 33NCS to freshwater fish and sea lampreys. <u>Invest.Fish Control U.S.</u> 1970 <u>Bur.Sport Fish.Wildl.</u>, (38):4-14
- Markus, H.C., The extent to which temperature changes influence food consumption in largemouth bass 1932 (<u>Huro floridanus</u>). <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (62):202-10
- Martin, R.G., Fisheries management investigations of impoundments. Effect of the removal of the ten-1959 inch minimum size limit on bass. Virginia Commission of Game and Inland Fisheries, (F-005-R-05/Job 01):1-7
- Martin, R.G. et al., Evaluation of a minimum length limit on largemouth bass. Virginia Commission of 1964 Game and Inland Fisheries Job Completion Report, D.J. Proj. F-5-R-10, Job 12
- Marzolf, R.C., Practicality and economic feasibility of rearing and stocking largemouth bass of one 1954 pound size. Missouri Conservation Commission, (F-001-R-03/wkpl 04/Job 01):21 p.
- Mawdesley-Thomas, L.E., Some tumours of fish. <u>Symp.Zool.Soc.Lond.</u>, (30):191-284 1972
- , Neoplasia. In The pathology of fishes, edited by W.E. Ribelin and G. Migaki. Madison, 1975 University of Wisconsin Press, pp. 805-70
- May, B.E., Evaluation of large scale release programs with special reference to bass fishing tournaments. 1973 <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 26(1972):325-9
- McCaig, R.S. and J.W. Mullan, Growth of eight species of fishes in Quabbin Reservoir, Massachusetts, in 1960 relation to age of reservoir and introduction of smelt. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 89(1):27-31
- McCraren, J.P., Hatchery production of advanced largemouth bass fingerlings. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.West.</u> 1974 <u>Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, (54):260-70
- Meehean, O.L., The development of a method for the culture of largemouth bass in fertilized ponds on 1940. natural food. M.S. Thesis, Ohio State University, Mansfield
  - \_\_\_\_\_, Marking largemouth bass. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, (51):46
- Meyer, F.A., Development of some larval centrarchids. Prog.Fish-Cult., 32(3):130-6 1970
- Meyer, F.P. and J.A. Robinson, Branchiomycosis: A new fungal disease of North American fishes. <u>Prog.</u> 1973 <u>Fish-Cult.</u>, 35(2):74-7
- Merriner, J.V., Development of intergenetic centrarchid hybrid embryos. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 100(4): 1971 611-8
- Miller, E.E., The age and growth of centrarchid fishes in Millerton and Pine Flat reservoirs, 1971 California. Admin.Rep.Calif.Fish Game Inland Fish., (71-4):17 p.
- Miller, K.D. and R.H. Kramer, Spawning and early life history of largemouth bass (Micropterus 1971 ~ salmoides) in Lake Powell. Spec.Publ.Am.Fish.Soc., (8):73-83
- Miller, L.W., A growth study and blood protein analysis of two subspecies of largemouth bass; the 1965 Florida bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides floridanus</u> (LeSueur), and the Northern bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides salmoides</u> (Lacepède), in San Diego County, California. <u>Admin.Rep.</u> <u>Calif.Fish Game Inland Fish.</u>, (65):17 p.
- Miller, R.W., Effects of fanning on the dissolved oxygen environment and mortality of largemouth bass 1970 embryos. M.S. Thesis, Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, 59 p.
- Ming, A. and W.E. McDonald, Effects of length limit on an overharvested largemouth bass population. 1975 <u>In</u> Black bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp.]416-24

- Molnár, G. and I. Tolg, Relation between water temperature and gastric digestion of largemouth bass 1962 (<u>Micropterus salmoides salmoides</u> Lacepède). J.Fish.Res.Board Can., 19(6):1005-12
- Moody, H.L., Tournament catch of largemouth bass from St. Johns River, Florida. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.</u> Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 28(1974):25 p. (mimeo)
- Moorman, R.B., Reproduction and growth of fishes in Marion County, Iowa, farm ponds. <u>Iowa State Coll.</u> 1957 <u>J.Sci.</u>, 32(1):71-88
- Morgan, G.D., A study of six different pond stocking ratios of largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides</u> 1958 (Lacepède), and bluegill, <u>Lepomis macrochirus</u> Rafinesque; and the relation of the chemical, physical and biological data to pond balance and productivity. <u>J.Sci.Lab.Denison Univ.</u>, (44):151-202
- , A study of the effects of fertilizers on vegetation growth, plankton population and 1960 numbers, and pounds of bass harvested in eight one-acre ponds. J.Sci.Lab.Denison Univ., (35):3-17
- Moss, D. and D.C. Scott, Dissolved oxygen requirements of three species of fish. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1961 90(4):377-93
- Moyle, J.B., J.H. Kuehan and C.R. Burrows, Fish-population and catch data from Minnesota lakes. 1949 <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 78(1948):163-75
- Mraz, D. and E.L. Cooper, Reproduction of carp, largemouth bass, bluegills and black crappies in small 1957 rearing ponds. <u>J.Wildl.Manage.</u>, 21(2):127-33
- Mraz, D. and C.W. Threinen, Angler's harvest, growth rate and population estimates of the largemouth 1957 bass of Browns Lake, Wisconsin. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 84(1955):241-55
- Mraz, D., S. Kimiotek and L. Frankenberger, The largemouth bass: its life history, ecology and 1961 management. <u>Publ.Wisc.Conserv.Dep.</u>, (232):15 p.
- Mulla, M.S., J. St. Amant and L.D. Anderson, Evaluation of organic pesticides for possible use as fish 1967 toxicants. Prog.Fish-Cult., 29(1):36-42
- Muncy, R.J., Aging and growth of largemouth bass, bluegill, and redear sunfish from Louisiana ponds 1966 of known stocking history. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game\_Fish\_Comm.</u>, 19(1965):343-9
- Nelson, J.T., R.G. Bowker and J.D. Robinson, Rearing pellet-fed largemouth bass in a raceway. <u>Prog.</u> 1974 <u>Fish-Cult.</u>, 36(2):108-10
- Niimi, A.J. and F.W.H. Beamish, Bioenergetics and growth of largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u>) 1974 in relation to body weight and temperature. <u>Can.J.Zool.</u>, (52):447-56
- Noble, R.L., R.D. Germany and C.R. Hall, Interactions of blue tilapia and largemouth bass in a power (in press) plant cooling reservoir. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 29(1975):11 p.
- Norman, M.D., A comparative pre- and post-impoundment survey of the helminth and crustacean parasites 1971 of <u>Micropterus salmoides</u> (Lacepède) and <u>M. punctulatus</u> (Rafinesque) (Perciformes) in Beaver Reservoir, Arkansas. M.S. Thesis, University of Arkansas, Fayetteville, 96 p.
- Novotny, D.W. and G.R. Preigel, Electro-fishing boats: Improved designs and operating guidelines to 1974 increase the effectiveness of boom shockers. <u>Tech.Bull.Wisc.Dep.Nat.Resour.</u>, (73):48 p.
- Nyberg, D.W., Prey capture in the largemouth bass. <u>Am.Midl.Nat.</u>, 86(1):128-44 1971
- O'Hara, J.J., Variations in respiratory metabolism of four species of sunfish (Centrarchidae) in 1966 relation to size, temperature and ecological distribution. Ph.D. Thesis, University of Miami, Miami, Florida, 95 p.
- Padfield, J.H., Jr., Age and growth differentiation between the sexes of the largemouth black bass 1951 <u>Micropterus salmoides (Lacepède)</u>. <u>J.Tenn.Acad.Sci.</u>, 26(1):42-54

- Pardue, G.B. and F.E. Hester, Variation in the growth rate of known-age largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus</u> 1967 <u>salmoides</u> Lacepède) under experimental conditions. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game</u> Fish\_Comm., 20(1966):300-10
- Parker, F.R., Reduced metabolic rates in fishes as a result of induced schooling. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1973 102(1):125-31
- Parker, R.A., Some effects of thinning a population of fishes. <u>Ecology</u>, (39):304-17 1958
- Parker, W.D., Preliminary studies on sexing adult largemouth bass by means of an external characteristic. 1971 <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 33(1):55-6
- Paulik, G.J. and W.H. Bayliff, A generalized computer program for the Ricker model of equilibrium 1967 yield per recruitment. J.Fish.Res.Board Can., 24(2):249-59
- Pfleiger, W.L., Checklist of the fishes of Missouri with keys for identifications. <u>D.J.Ser.Mo.Dep.</u> 1968 <u>Conserv.Div.Fish.</u>, (3):64 p.
- Pierce, P.C., J.E. Frey and H.M. Yawn, An evaluation of fishery management techniques utilizing 1964 winter drawdowns. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 17(1963):347-63
- Plumb, J.A., J.L. Gaines and M. Jennings, Experimental use of antibiotics in preventing delayed 1974 mortality in a bass tournament on Lake Seminole, Georgia. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.</u> <u>Game Fish Comm.</u>, (28):8 p.
- Powell, D.H., Management of largemouth bass in Alabama's state-owned public fishing lakes. In 1975 Black bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 386-90
- Prather, E.E., Efficiency of food conversion of young largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u> Lacepède). 1951 <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 80(1950):154-7
- , A note on the accuracy of the scale method in determining the ages of largemouth bass 1967 and bluegill from Alabama waters. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 20(1966): 483-6
- Premvati, G., <u>Multigonotylus micropteri</u> gen. et sp. n. and <u>Caecincola wakullata</u> sp. n. (digenea: 1967 Cryptogonimidae) from freshwater bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides</u>. <u>J.Parasitol.</u>, 53(4):743-6
- Prentice, J.A. and B.G. Whiteside, Validation of ageing techniques for largemouth bass and channel 1975 catfish in central Texas farm ponds. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 28(1974): pp. 414-28
- Pritchard, D.L., Fish marking study. Heart of the Hills Fisheries Station, Texas Parks and Wildlife 1972 Department, (F-023-R-01/Job 01):7 p.
- Prosser, N.S., Lake Burke creel census survey. Virginia Commission of Game and Inland Fisheries 1973 Final Report, D.J. Proj. F-23-3, Job 1, 48 p.
- Purkett, C.A., Growth rates of Missouri stream fishes. <u>D.J.Ser.Mo.Dep.Conserv.</u>, (1):48 p. n.d.
- Radabaugh, D.C., Comparative study of learning in two species of centrarchid fish. Ph.D. Thesis, 1970 Ohio State University, Mansfield, 122 p.
- Rafinesque, C.S., Ichthyologia Ohiensis or natural history of the fishes inhabiting the Ohio River 1820 and its tributary streams, preceded by a physical description of the Ohio and its branches. Lexington, W.G. Hunt, 90 p.
- Range, J.D., The possible effect of the threadfin shad, <u>Dorosoma petenense</u> (Gunther), on the growth 1971 of five species of game fish in Dale Hollow Reservoir, Tennessee. M.S. Thesis, Tennessee Technical University, Cookeville, 52 p.

- Raver, D.D. and J.H. Cornell, Comparative growth rates of largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u> 1951 Lacepède) in North Carolina waters. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, (5):7 p.
- Rawstron, R.R., Harvest, mortality, and movement of selected warmwater fishes in Folsom Lake, 1967 California. <u>Calif.Fish Game</u>, 53(1):40-8
  - \_\_\_\_\_, Nonreporting of tagged white catfish, largemouth bass, and bluegills by anglers at 1971 Folsom Lake, California. <u>Calif.Fish Game</u>, 57(4):246-52
- \_\_\_\_\_, Nonreporting of tagged largemouth bass, 1966 1969. Calif.Fish Game, 58(2):143-5
- Rawstron, R.R. and K.H. Hashagen, Mortality and survival rates of tagged largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus</u> 1972 <u>salmoides</u>) at Merle Collins Reservoir. <u>Calif.Fish Game</u>, 58(3):221-30
- Redmond, L.C., Prevention of overharvest of largemouth bass in Missouri impoundments. <u>In</u> Symposium 1974 on overharvest and impoundments. <u>Spec.Publ.Am.Fish.Soc.Northcent.Div.</u>, (3):54-68
- Regier, H.A., Ecology and management of largemouth bass and golden shiners in farm ponds in New York. 1963 J.N.Y.Fish Game Comm., 10(2):139-69
- \_\_\_\_\_, Ecology and management of largemouth bass and bluegills in farm ponds in New York. 1963 J.N.Y.Fish Game Comm., 10(1):1-89
- Reid, G.K., Jr., Anomalies in two species of centrarchid fishes from Florida. <u>Copeia</u>, 1951(1):94 1951
- Reid, P. and E.L. Triplett, Observations on the immune system of <u>Micropterus salmoides</u>. <u>Transplantation</u>, 1968 6(3):338-41
- Reighard, J.E., The breeding habits, development and propagation of the black bass. <u>Bienn.Rep.Mich.</u> 1906 <u>State Board Fish.Comm.</u>, (16):1-73
- Ricker, W.E., Effect of removal of fins upon the growth and survival of spiny-rayed fishes. <u>J.Wildl.</u> 1949 <u>Manage.</u>, 13(1):29-40
- Ricker, W.E. and J. Gottschalk, An experiment in removing coarse fish from a lake. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1941 70(1940):382-90
- Robbins, W.H. and H.R. McCrimmon, The blackbass in America and overseas. Ontario, Canada, Biomanagement 1974 and Research Enterprises, 196 p.
- Roberts, F.L., A chromosome study of twenty species of Centrarchidae. <u>J.Morphol.</u>, (115):401-9 1964
- Robins, R.C. and J.E. Böhlke, <u>Pikea sericea</u>, a synonym of the American centrarchid fish. <u>Copeia</u>, 1960 1960(2):147
- Rodenheffer, I.A., The use of brush shelters by fish in Douglas Lake, Michigan. <u>Pap.Mich.Acad.Sci.</u> 1940 <u>Arts Lett.</u>, 25(1939):357-66
  - , The movement of marked fish in Douglas Lake, Michigan. <u>Pap.Mich.Acad.Sci.Arts Lett.</u>, 1941 26(1940):265-80

- Rogers, W.A., Food habits of young largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>) in hatchery ponds. <u>Proc.</u> 1968 <u>Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 21(1967):543-53
- Rosebery, D.A., Game fish survey of the impounded public fishing waters. Fish survey of Black Bay. 1952 Virginia Commission of Game and Inland Fisheries, (F-001-R-01/SP):30 p.

<sup>,</sup> Fish populations in and around brush shelters of different sizes placed at varying depths and distances apart in Douglas Lake, Michigan. <u>Pap.Mich.Acad.Sci.Arts Lett.</u>, 30(1944):321-45

- Saila, S.B. and D. Horton, Fisheries investigation and management in Rhode Island lakes and ponds. 1957 <u>Fish Publ.R.I.Div.Fish.Wildl.</u>, (3):134 p.
- Sandow, J., A comparison of population sampling results with the total fish population of a 90-acre 1971 Georgia reservoir. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 24(1970):321-31
- Sarbahi, D.S., Studies of the digestive tracts and the digestive enzymes of the goldfish, <u>Carassius</u> 1951 <u>auratus</u> (Linnaeus) and the largemouth black bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides</u> (Lacepède). <u>Biol.Bull.Mar.Biol.Lab.</u>, Woods Hole, 100(3):244-57
- Schaefer, M.B., Some aspects of the dynamics of populations important to the management of the 1954 commercial marine fisheries. <u>Bull.I-ATTC</u>, 1(2):27-56
- Schafer, H.E. and D.W. Greagen, Report on operation of the Lake Chicot Fishway. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 1958 20(2):82-8
- Schneider, J.C., Characteristics of a population of warm-water fishes in a southern Michigan lake, 1971 1964-1969. <u>Dev.Rep.Mich.Dep.Conserv.</u>, (236):158 p.
- Schnick, R.A., A review of the literature on the use of rotenone in fisheries. Springfield, Virginia, 1974a U.S. Department of the Interior Fish Wildlife, National Technical Information Service, PB-235-454 (Microfilm)
- , A review of the literature on the use of Antimycin in fisheries. Springfield, Virginia, 1974b U.S. Department of the Interior Fish Wildlife, National Technical Information Service, PB-235-440 (Microfilm)
- Schumacher, F.X. and R.W. Eschmeyer, The recapture and distribution of tagged bass in Norris Reservoir, 1942 Tennessee. <u>J.Tenn.Acad.Sci.</u>, 17(3):253-67
- Schwartz, F.J., Natural salinity tolerances of some freshwater fishes. <u>Underwater Nat.</u>, (2):13-5 1964
- Scott, W.B. and E.J. Crossman, Freshwater fishes of Canada. <u>Bull.Fish.Res.Board Can.</u>, (184):966 p. 1973
- Seaburg, K. and J. Moyle, Feeding habits, digestive rates and growth of some Minnesota warmwater 1964 fishes. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 93(3):269-85
- Severson, B.I., A fish catching box. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 25(1):39 1963
- Shafer, G.D., The mosaic of the single and twin cones in the retina of <u>Micropterus salmoides</u>. <u>Arch.</u> 1900 <u>Entwicklungsmech.Organ.</u>, (10):685-91
- Shealy, M.H., Jr., Nesting bass observed with underwater television. <u>N.Y.Food Life Sci.</u>, 4(4):18-20 1971
- Shealy, M.H., Jr. and G.W. Shiflet, Jr., Acute toxicity of Diquat to largementh bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u> 1969 Lacepède) and golden shiners (<u>Notemigonus crysoleucas</u> Mitchell) in New York waters. <u>Bull.S.C.Acad.Sci.</u>, (31):45
- Sheridan, J.R., Evaluation of minimum size limit on largemouth bass in state fishing lakes and other 1962 ponds. Virginia Commission of Game and Inland Fisheries, (F-005-R-081 Job 12/A):91 p.
- Sherry, D., Fish kill damages: monetary values of fishes. In Fish kill investigation seminar. 1971 Cincinnati, Ohio, Environmental Protection Agency, Federal Water Quality Administration, and Ohio Cooperative Fisheries Units, Ohio State University, 5 p.
- Smith, B.W., C.E. White and G.R. Hooper, Management techniques for largemouth bass in Alabama ponds. 1975 In Black bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. 380-5
- Smith, G., Florida largemouth bass in southern California. <u>Fla.Wildl.</u>, 25(4):30 1971

| Smith, W.A.<br>1955  | , J.B. Kirkwood and J.F. Hall, Survey of the success of various stocking rates and ratios<br>of bass and bluegill in Kentucky farm ponds. <u>Fish.Bull.Ky.Dep.Fish.Wildl.Resour.</u> , (16):42 p. |
|----------------------|---|
| Snow, H.E.,<br>1971  | Harvest and feeding habits of largemouth bass in Murphy Flowage, Wisconsin. <u>Tech.Bull.</u><br>Wisc.Dep.Nat.Resour., (50):25 p.   |
| Snow, J.R.,<br>1961  | An exploratory attempt to rear largemouth black bass fingerlings in a controlled environment. Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 14(1959):253-7                                      |
| 1961                 | _, Forage fish preference and growth rate of largemouth black bass fingerlings under experimental conditions. Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 15(1960):303-13                     |
| 1965                 | _, Results of further experiments on rearing largemouth bass fingerlings under controlled conditions. Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 17(1963):191-208                            |
| 1968a                | _, The Oregon moist pellet as a diet for largemouth bass. Prog.Fish-Cult., 30(4):235  |
| 1968ъ                | _, Production of six- to eight-inch largemouth bass for special purposes. Prog.Fish-Cult., $30(3):144-52$   |
| 1969                 | _, Some progress in the controlled culture of the largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u> , (Lacepède). <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u> , 22(1968):380-7       |
| 1970                 | _, Culture of the largemouth bass. <u>In</u> Report of the 1970 Workshop on fish feed technology and nutrition. <u>Resour.Publ.U.S.Bur.Sport Fish.Wildl.</u> , (102):86-102                       |
| 1971a                | _, Fecundity of largemouth bass <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u> Lacepède receiving artificial food.<br><u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 24(1970):550-9</u>                  |
| 1971b                | _, Culture of large bass fingerlings with artificial food. Paper presented at the Tennessee Fish Farmers Conference, 14 p. (mimeo)  |
| 1973                 | _, Controlled culture of largemouth bass fry. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish</u><br><u>Comm.</u> , 26(1972):392-8  |
| 1975                 | _, Hatchery propagation of the black basses. In Black bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp. $344-56$                                  |
| Snow, J.R. a<br>1974 | and R.T. Lovell, Comparison or organoleptic quality of largemouth bass fed natural and artificial diets. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u> , 36(4):216-8   |
| Snow, J.R. a         | and C.F. Wright, Rearing largemouth bass fingerlings in cages. Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.<br>Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 29(1975):21 p. (in press)  |
| Spall, R.D.,<br>1968 | , The endoparasitic helminths of fishes from Lake Carl Blackwell, Oklahoma. <u>Proc.Okla.</u><br><u>Acad.Sci.</u> , (49):91-6   |
| Spencer, S.I<br>1967 | , Internal injuries of largemouth bass and bluegills caused by electricity. <u>Prog.Fish-</u><br><u>Cult.</u> , 29(3):168-9   |
| 1967                 | , Investigations in the use of electricity for thinning overcrowded populations of bluegill. Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 20(1966):432-6                                       |
| Starrett, W.<br>1955 | C. and P.G. Barnickol, Efficiency and selectivity of commercial fishing devices used on the Mississippi River. <u>Bull.Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv.</u> , 26(4):325-66                                      |
| Starrett, W.<br>1965 | C. and A.W. Fritz, A biological investigation of the fishes of Lake Chautauqua, Illinois.<br>Bull.Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv., 29(1):100-4   |
|                      | N., Jr. and C.R. Atherton, Use of microhematocrit values to sex largemouth bass. Prog.<br>Fish-Cult., 27(2):87-90   |
| Stevens, R.H<br>1970 | E., Hormonal relationships affecting maturation and ovulation in largemouth bass ( <u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u> Lacepède). Ph.D. Thesis, North Carolina State University, Aurora, 95 p.    |

- Stevenson, F., Evaluation of the Florida strain of largemouth bass in Ohio. Ohio Division of Wildlife, 1972 (F-029-R-11/wkpl 06/Job c):6 p.
- Stewart, N.E., D. Schumway and P. Doudoroff, Influence of oxygen concentration on the growth of 1967 juvenile largemouth bass. <u>J.Fish.Res.Board</u> Can., (24):475-94
- Stocek, R.F. and H.R. McCrimmon, The co-existence of rainbow trout (<u>Salmo gairdneri</u> Richardson) and 1965 largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u> Lacepède) in a small Ontario Lake. <u>Can.Fish Cult.</u>, (35):37-58
- Stroud, R.H., Growth of the basses and black crappie in Norris Reservoir, Tennessee. <u>J.Tenn.Acad.Sci.</u>, 1948 23(1):31-99
- Stroud, R.H. and H. Bitzer, Harvest and management of warm-water fish populations in Massachusetts 1955 lakes, ponds, and reservoirs. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 17(1):51-62
- Stroud, R.H. and R.G. Martin, <u>Fish Conservation Highlights, Wash., D.C.</u>, (1963-1967):147 p. 1968
- Summerfelt, R.C., Relationships between weather and year-class strength of largemouth bass. In 1975 Black bass biology and management, edited by H. Clepper. Washington, D.C., Sport Fishing Institute, pp.167-74
- Surber, E.W. and Q.H. Pickering, Acute toxicity of Endothal, Diquat, Hyamine, Dalapon, and Silvex to 1962 fish. Prog.Fish-Cult., (24):164-71
- Swingle, H.S., Improvement of fishing in old ponds. <u>Trans.North Am.Wildl.Conf.</u>, (10):299-308 1945

1949

1952

Some recent developments in pond management. Trans.North Am.Wildl.Conf., (14):295-310

- , Relationships and dynamics of balanced and unbalanced fish populations. <u>Bull.Ala.</u> 1950 Polytech.Inst.Agric.Exp.Stn., (274):73 p.
- , Experiments with various rates of stocking bluegills, <u>Lepomis macrochirus</u> Rafinesque, 1951 and largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus salmoides</u> (Lacepède), in ponds. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 80(1950):218-30

Farm pond investigations in Alabama. J.Wildl.Manage., 16(3):243-9

- Fish populations in Alabama rivers and impoundments. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 83(1953):47-57
- , Appraisal of methods of fish population study. Part 4. Determination of balance in 1956 farm fish ponds. <u>Trans.North Am.Wildl.Conf.</u>, (21):298-322
- , Comparative evaluation of two tilapias as pond fishes in Alabama. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1960 89(2):142-8
- , Management techniques for public fishing waters: Control of unbalanced fish populations. 1961 Alabama Division of Game and Fisheries, (F-010-R-02/Job 04):5 p.

, Management techniques for public fishing waters: Control of unbalanced fish populations. 1962 Alabama Division of Game and Fisheries, (F-010-R-03/Job 04):4 p.

- Swingle, H.S. and E.V. Smith, Factors affecting the reproduction of bluegill bream and largemouth 1943 black bass in ponds. <u>Circ.Ala.Polytech.Inst.Exp.Stn.</u>, (87):8 p.
- Swingle, H.S., E.E. Prather and J.M. Lawrence, Partial poisoning of overcrowded fish populations. 1953 Bull.Ala.Polytech.Inst.Agric.Exp.Stn., (113):15 p.

Swingle, W.E., Length-weight relationships of Alabama fishes. <u>Auburn Univ.Zool.Entom.Dep.Ser.Fish.</u>, 1965 (3):87 p.

- Swingle, W.E. and R.O. Smitherman, Estimation of bass numbers in a farm pond prior to draining with 1966 electroshocking and angling. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 19(1965):246-53
- Taber, C.A., The yellow grub in centrarchids of southwest Missouri streams. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 34(2):119 1972
- Tebo, L.B., Preliminary experiments on the use of spaghetti tags. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game</u> 1957 <u>Fish Comm.</u>, 10(1956):77-80
- Tebo, L.B. and E.G. McCoy, Effect of seawater concentration on the reproduction and survival of 1964 largemouth bass and bluegill. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 26(3):99-106
- Tharratt, R.C., The age and growth of centrarchid fishes in Folsom Lake, California. <u>Calif.Fish Game</u>, 1966 52(1):4-16
- Thompson, D.H., Growth of the large-mouth black bass, <u>Huro</u> <u>salmoides</u>, in Lake Naivasha, Kenya. 1939 <u>Nature, Lond.</u>, (143):561-2

, The fish production of inland streams and lakes. In A symposium on hydrobiology, 1941 edited by H.D. Thompson. Madison, University of Wisconsin Press, pp. 206-17

- Thompson, D.H. and G.W. Bennett, Lake management reports. 3. Lincoln Lakes near Lincoln, Illinois. 1949 <u>Biol.Notes Ill.Nat.Hist.Surv.</u>, (19):2-24
- Thompson, J.D., Age and growth of largemouth bass in Clear Lake, Iowa. <u>Proc.Iowa Acad.Sci.</u>, (71): 1964 252-8
- Threinen, C.W., The success of a seine in the sampling of largemouth bass populations. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 1956 18(2):81-7
- Toetz, D., J. Wilhm and R. Summerfelt, Biological effects of artificial destratification and aeration 1972 in lakes and reservoirs - analysis and bibliography. Denver, Colorado, U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation Rep. REC-ERC-72-33:123 p.
- Tompkins, W.A. and B.T. Carter, The growth rate of some Kentucky fishes. <u>Fish.Bull.Ky.Div.Game Fish.</u>, 1951 (6):1-9
- Toots, H., Exotic fishes in Rhodesia. <u>Rhodesia Agric.J.</u>, 67(4):1-6 1970
- Topel, H.C., Pond record of bass and bluegill production. <u>Prog.Fish-Cult.</u>, 11(4):231-43 1949
- Trautman, M.B., Fluctuations in lengths and numbers of certain species of fishes over a five-year 1941 period in Whitmore Lake, Michigan. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 70(1940):193-208
- Trenary, J.D., Growth of three Centrarchidae in Lake Fort Smith, Arkansas. M.S. Thesis, University 1958 of Arkansas, Fayetteville, 53 p.
- Turner, C.L. and W.C. Kraatz, Food of young largemouth bass in some Ohio waters. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 1920 (50):372-80
- Turner, W.R., Standing crops of fishes in Kentucky farm ponds. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 89(4):333-7 1960
- Tyus, H.M., Artificial intergeneric hybridization of <u>Amplophites rupestris</u>, as an aid in determining 1969 phylogenetic relationships in the sunfish families (Centrarchidae). M.S. Thesis, North Carolina State University, Aurora, 48 p.
- Vanderhorst, J.R., The response of selected forage organisms to predation by the largemouth bass 1967 (<u>Micropterus salmoides</u>). M.A. Thesis, Southern Illinois University, Carbondale, 27 p.
- Vasey, F.W., The fish populations of Pomme de Terre Reservoir. Missouri Conservation Commission, 1972 (F-001-R-16/wkpl 18/Job 01):30 p.

greater food production. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 73(1943):274-83 1945 Vogele, L.E. and W.C. Rainwater, Use of brush shelters as cover by spawning black basses (Micropterus) 1975 in Bull Shoals Reservoir. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 104(2):264-9 Volterra, V., Variations and fluctuations of the number of individuals in animal species living 1928 together. J.Cons.CIEM, (3):1-51 Walker, C.R., Toxicological effects of herbicides on the fish environment. Proc.Annu.Air Water Pollut. 1962 Conf., 8(F-001-R):17-34Diuron, Fenuron, Monuron, Neburon, and TCA mixtures as aquatic herbicides in fish 1964 habitats. Weeds, 13(4):297-301 Simazine and other s-triazine compounds as aquatic herbicides in fish habitats. Weeds, 1964 12(2):134-9 Walker, C.R., R.E. Lennon and B.L. Berger, Preliminary observations on the toxicity of antimycin A to fish and other aquatic animals. Invest.Fish Control U.S.Bur.Sport Fish.Wildl., (2):18 p. 1964 Wallen, I.E., The direct effects of turbidity on fishes. Biol.Ser.Arts Sci.Stud.Okla., (2):27 p. 1951 Warden, R.L., Jr., Movements of largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus</u> <u>salmoides</u>) in impounded waters as determined by underwater telemetry. M.S. Thesis, Mississippi State University, 46 p. 1973 Warden, R.L., Jr. and W.J. Lorio, Movements of largemouth bass (Micropterus salmoides) in impounded waters as determined by underwater telemetry. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 104(4):696-702 1975 Ware, F.J., Lake management and research haul seine study. Florida Game and Fresh Water Fish Commission, F-012-R-13/Job 01/Final, 31 p. 1971 Warner, K., Further studies of fish predation on salmon stocked in Maine lakes. Prog.Fish-Cult., 1972 34(4):217-21 Wegener, W.L., A tag comparison study of largemouth bass in their natural environment. Proc.Annu. Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm., 19(1965):258-64 1966 Wegener, W.L. and V. Williams, Fish population responses to improved lake habitat utilizing an 1975 extreme drawdown. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 28(1974):pp. 144-60 Weiss, C.M., Physiological effect of organic phosphorus insecticides on several species of fish. 1961 Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 90(2):143-52 Weissenberg, R., Studies on virus diseases of fish. 4. Lymphocystis disease in Centrarchidae. Zoologica, 30(16):169-84 1945 Wenger, A.G., A review of the literature concerning largemouth bass stocking techniques. Tech.Ser. Texas Parks Wildl. Dep., (13):40 p. 1972 West, J.L., The gonads and reproduction of three intergeneric sunfish (family Centrarchidae) hybrids. Evolution, (24):378-94 1970 West, J.L. and F.E. Hester, Intergeneric hybridization of centrarchids. Trans.Am.Fish.Soc., 95(3): 1966 280-8 Wheat, T.E., W.F. Childers and G.S. Whitt, Bio-chemical genetics of hybrid sunfish: differential survival of heterozygotes. Biochem.Genet., 11(3):205-19 1974 Wheat, T.E. et al., Genetic and in vitro molecular hybridization of malate dehydrogenase isozymes in interspecific bass (Micropterus) hybrids. Anim.Blood Groups Biochem.Genet., (2):3-14 1971

Viosca, P., Jr., A critical analysis of practices in the management of warmwater fish with a view to

White, W.J. and R.J. Beamish, A simple fish tag suitable for long term marking experiments. <u>J.Fish.</u> 1972 <u>Res.Board Can.</u>, (29):339-41

- Whitmore, C.M., C.E. Warren and P. Doudoroff, Avoidance reactions of salmonid and centrarchid fishes 1960 to low oxygen concentrations. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, 89(1):17-26
- Whitt, G.S., W.F. Childers and T.E. Wheat, The inheritance of tissue-specific lactate dehydrogenase 1971 isozymes in interspecific bass (<u>Micropterus</u>) hybrids. <u>Biochem.Genet.</u>, (5):257-73
- Whitt, G.S., E.T. Miller and J.B. Shaklee, Developmental and biochemical genetics of lactate 1973 dehydrogenase isozymes in fishes. <u>In</u> Genetics and mutagenesis of fish, edited by J.H. Schröder. Berlin, Springer-Verlag
- Wiebe, A.H., Notes on the exposure of several species of fish to sudden changes in the hydrogen 1931 concentration of the water and to an atmosphere of pure oxygen. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (61):216-24

\_\_\_\_\_, The pond culture of black bass. <u>Bull.Texas Game Fish Oyster Comm.</u>, (8):6-58 1935

- Wiebe, A.H. and A.M. McGavock, The ability of several species of fish to survive on prolonged exposure 1932 to abnormally high concentrations of dissolved oxygen. <u>Trans.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (62):267-74
- Wilbur, R.L. and R.M. Duchrow, Differential retention of five floy tags on largemouth bass (<u>Micropterus</u> 1973 <u>salmoides</u>) in hatchery ponds. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 26(1972): 407-13
- Wilbur, R.L. and F. Langford, Use of human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) to promote gametic production 1975 in male and female largemouth bass. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game Fish Comm.</u>, 28(1974):pp.242-50
- Wilson, A.J., Distribution units for warmwater fish. Prog.Fish-Cult., 12(4):211-3 1950
- Witt, A., Jr., Experiments in learning with fishes with shocking and hooking as penalties. M.S. Thesis, 1949 University of Illinois, Urbana, 60 p.
- Wollitz, R.E., Back Bay fishery investigation. Virginia Commission of Game and Inland Fisheries, 1962 D.J. Proj. (F-5-R-8):33 p.
- Wright, L.D., Forage size preference of the largemouth bass. Prog.Fish-Cult., 32(1):39-42 1970
- Wright, L.D. and J.R. Snow, The effect of six chemicals for disinfection of largemouth bass eggs. 1975 Prog.Fish-Cult., 37(4):213-6
- Wurtz-Arlet, J., Le black-bass en France. <u>Ann.Stn.Cent.Hydrobiol.Appl.</u>, (4):203-86 1952
- Zeller, H.D. and H.N. Wyatt, Selective shad removal in southern reservoirs. <u>In</u> Reservoir fisheries 1967 symposium, Southern Division American Fisheries Society. Athens, University of Georgia, pp.405-14
- Zweiacker, P.L., Population dynamics of largemouth bass in an 808-hectare Oklahoma reservoir. 1972 Ph.D. Thesis, Oklahoma State University, Stillwater, 126 p.
- Zweiacker, P.L. and B.E. Brown, Production of a minimal largemouth bass population in a 3000-acre 1971 turbid Oklahoma reservoir. <u>Spec.Publ.Am.Fish.Soc.</u>, (8):481-93
- Zweiacker, P.L. and R.C. Summerfelt, Seasonal variation in food diel periodicity in feeding of 1974 northern largemouth bass, <u>Micropterus s. salmoides</u> (Lacepède), in an Oklahoma reservoir. <u>Proc.Annu.Conf.Southeast.Assoc.Game\_Fish\_Comm.</u>, 27(1973):579-91

# **FISHERIES SYNOPSES**

This series of documents, issued by FAO, CSIRO, INP and NMFS, contains comprehensive reviews of present knowledge on species and stocks of aquatic organisms of present or potential economic interest. The Fishery Resources and Environment Division of FAO is responsible for the overall coordination of the series. The primary purpose of this series is to make existing information readily available to fishery scientists according to a standard pattern, and by so doing also to draw attention to gaps in knowledge. It is hoped that synopses in this series will be useful to other scientists initiating investigations of the species concerned or of related ones, as a means of fisheries resources. The will be brought up to date from time to time as further information becomes available.

The documents of this Series are issued under the following titles:

|       |                             | Gynnbol |
|-------|-----------------------------|---------|
| FAO   | Fisheries Synopsis No.      | FIR/S   |
| CSIRO | Fisheries Synopsis No.      | DFO/S   |
| INP   | Sinopsis sobre la Pesca No. | INP/S   |
| NMFS  | Fisheries Synopsis No.      | NMFS/S  |

Synopses in these series are compiled according to a standard outline described in Flb/S1 Rev. 1 (1965). FAO, CSIRO, INP and NMFS are working to secure the cooperation of other organizations and of individual scientists in drafting synopses on species about which they have knowledge, and welcome offers of help in this task. Additions and corrections to synopses already issued will also be most welcome. Comments on individual synopses and requests for information should be addressed to the coordinators and editors of the issuing organizations, and suggestions regarding the expansion or modification of the outline, to FAO:

### FAO:

Fishery Resources and Environment Division Aquatic Resources Survey and Evaluation Service Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations Via delle Terme di Caracalla 00100 Rome, Italy

#### INP:

Instituto Nacional de Pesca Subsecretaría de Pesca Secretaría de Pesca Secretaría de Industria y Comercio Carmona y Valle 101-403 México 7, D.F.

## CSIRO:

Symbol

CSIRO Division of Fisheries and Oceanography Box 21 Cronulla, N.S.W. 2230 Australia

### NMFS:

Systematics Laboratory U.S. National Museum of Natural History Washington, D.C. 20560 U.S.A.

Consolidated lists of species or groups covered by synopses issued to date or in preparation will be issued from time to time. Requests for copies of synopses should be addressed to the issuing organization.

The following synopses in this series have been issued since January 1974:

| FIRS/S90  | Synopsis of biological data on Sarotherodon galilaeus  | July 1974      |
|-----------|--|----------------|
| FIRS/S109 | Exposé synoptique des données biologiques sur le germon <i>Thunnus alalunga</i><br>de l'océan Atlantique | October 1974   |
| FIRS/S111 | Synopsis of biological data on Labeo rohita  | June 1975      |
| FIRS/S112 | Synopsis of biological data on Nephrops norvegicus   | September 1975 |
| INP/S2    | Sinopsis de datos biológicos sobre la tortuga golfina  | Febrero 1976   |
| FIR/S115  | Synopsis of biological data on the Micropterus salmoides   | November 1976  |

ISBN 92-5-100211-8